

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1927, by
The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter at the post-offices at Washington, D. C., and Hanover, Pa., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Hanover, Pa.

Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c.

Foreign Postage, 25c Additional

CAVALRY TRAINING REGULATIONS

Regulations marked "R" are for cavalry officers assigned to rifle units only; those marked "M" for cavalry officers assigned to machine gun units only; those marked "RM" for both.

T. R. No.	
RM 10-5, Doctrines, Principles and Methods .....	.05
RM 25-10, Officers' Instruction with Saber .....	.05
RM 50-15, Instruction Dismounted without Arms .....	.05
RM 50-20, Instruction Dismounted with Rifle and Automatic Rifle .....	.10
RM 50-45, Instruction Mounted without Arms .....	.10
RM 50-50, Instruction Mounted with Rifle .....	.05
RM 50-55, Instruction Dismounted with Pistol .....	.05
RM 50-60, Instruction Mounted with Pistol .....	.05
RM 50-65, Instruction with Saber .....	.05
R 50-70, Saber Exercise .....	.05
R 50-75, Instruction with Machine Rifle .....	.05
RM 50-95, Display of Equipment .....	.05
RM 112-5, First Aid .....	.10
RM 113-5, Personal Hygiene .....	.05
RM 135-10, Guard Mounting .....	.05
RM 135-15, Interior Guard Duty .....	.05
R 145-5, Musketry .....	.10
RM 150-5, Marksmanship, Rifle, Individual .....	.10
RM 150-10, Marksmanship, Rifle, General .....	.05
RM 150-25, Marksmanship, Pistol, Mounted .....	.05
R 150-30, Marksmanship, Automatic Rifle .....	.10
M 150-35, Marksmanship, Machine Gun .....	.15
RM 160-5, Signal Communications .....	.15
RM 162-5, Visual Signaling .....	.05
RM 190-5, Map Reading .....	.10
RM 190-10, Conventional Signs .....	.30
RM 190-15, Military Sketching .....	.10
RM 190-20, Panoramic Sketching .....	.10
R 195-30, Explosives and Demolitions .....	.15
R 200-5, Scouting and Patrolling, Dismounted .....	.10
R 200-10, Scouting and Patrolling, Mounted .....	.15
RM 225-10, Pitching Shelter Tents .....	.05
RM 225-15, Pitching Common, Wall and Pyramidal Tents .....	.05
M 240-10, Machine Guns, Direct Laying .....	.10
M 240-15, Machine Guns, Indirect Laying .....	.35
M 240-20, Machine Guns, Combat Practice .....	.05
M 240-30, Machine Guns, Mathematics .....	.05
RM 300-50, Equipment, Field Ranges .....	.05
RM 320-10, Weapons, Rifle .....	.10
RM 320-15, Weapons, Pistol .....	.05
R 320-25, Weapons, Automatic Rifle .....	.10
M 320-35, Weapons, Machine Gun .....	.15
RM 360-5, Care of Animals .....	.15
RM 360-10, Training Remounts .....	.05
RM 360-20, Training Pack Animals .....	.05
RM 425-15, Cavalry Drill, General Principles, etc. .....	.05
RM 425-20, Drill and Combat Signals .....	.05
R 425-25, Cavalry Rifle Squad .....	.05
R 425-30, Cavalry Rifle Platoon .....	.05
R 425-35, Cavalry Machine Rifle Platoon .....	.05
R 425-45, Cavalry Rifle Troop .....	.05
R 425-50, Cavalry Rifle Squadron .....	.05
R 425-55, Cavalry Regiment .....	.05
M 425-60, Duties of Machine Gun Personnel .....	.05
M 425-65, Cavalry Machine Gun Squad .....	.10
M 425-70, Cavalry Machine Gun Platoon .....	.05
M 425-75, Cavalry Machine Gun Troop .....	.05
M 425-80, Cavalry Machine Gun Squadron .....	.05
RM 425-85, Cavalry Brigade .....	.05
R 425-100, Cavalry Service Troop .....	.05
M 425-110, Employment of Cavalry Machine Guns .....	.20
RM 425-130, Cavalry Ceremonies and Inspections .....	.05
RM W. D. Doc. 1050, Pistol Marksmanship .....	.15
RM Kalamazoo Binder	\$2.10

Total price of regulations, with Kalamazoo binder, for rifle unit officers **\$6.00**

Total price of regulations, with Kalamazoo binder, for machine gun officers **\$6.20**

Total price of all cavalry regulations, with two Kalamazoo binders **\$9.45**

Order From United States Cavalry Association

1624 H. St., N. W.

Washington, D. C.

CONTENTS FOR JANUARY, 1927

VOL. XXXVI, No. 146

	Page
WITH INDIAN AND BUFFALO IN MONTANA	7
Brigadier General E. J. McClelland.	
THE RACE TO THE SEA	55
Transcription from <i>Revue de Cavalerie</i> .	
Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry.	
CHINESE CAVALRY PRODUCE A DECISIVE VICTORY	64
Brigadier General Henry J. Reilly, O. R. C.	
THE 1926 CAVALRY LEADERSHIP TESTS FOR SMALL UNITS	77
Captain W. B. Bradford, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY'S CAVALRY	90
Major Paul R. Davison, Cavalry.	
THE 1926 ENDURANCE RIDE	96
Captain John A. Weeks, 3d Cavalry.	
ANNUAL REPORT OF CHIEF OF CAVALRY	105
IMPROVISED RADIO EQUIPMENT FOR NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY	109
Captain Kramer Thomas, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL HUNT RACE MEETING	113
Major E. M. Whiting, 2d Cavalry.	
THE NATIONAL WESTERN ENDURANCE RIDE	118
Colonel H. R. Richmond, 13th Cavalry.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT	122
MAJOR GENERAL ROBERT LEE HOWZE—THE STUDY OF LANGUAGES—HELP OUR INTERNATIONAL RIFLE TEAM—A MEMBERSHIP RECORD—WINNER OF GOODRICH TROPHY.	
TOPICS OF THE DAY	126
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL HUNT RACE MEETING—CAVALRY BOARD NOTES.	
FOREIGN MILITARY NOTES	130
HORSE SHOWS	132
FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION HORSE SHOW—CHATTANOOGA—SIXTH CAVALRY HORSE SHOW—ARMY TEAM AT FALL HORSE SHOWS—THE NATIONAL HORSE SHOW.	
THE NATIONAL GUARD	147
NOTES ON VISITS TO NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY CAMPS Lieut. Colonel A. F. Commiskey, Cavalry.	
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES	151
NOTES ON A RESERVE TRAINING CAMP Lieut. Claude F. Baker, 324th Cavalry.	
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED	160
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS	163
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES	165
REGIMENTAL NOTES	166

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General MALIN CRAIG

Vice-President

Colonel HAMILTON S. HAWKINS, (Cavalry) G. S. C.

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel F. S. FOLTZ, U. S. A. Retired
Colonel T. A. ROBERTS, Cavalry
Colonel L. B. BALLANTYNE, 102d Cavalry
Colonel W. M. CONNELL, (Cavalry) G. S. C.
Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve
Lt. Col. DANIEL VAN VOORHIS, Cavalry
Lt. Col. A. B. COXE, Cavalry
Major A. R. CHAFFEE, 3d Cavalry

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



Major General Charles P. Summerall
Chief of Staff, United States Army

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXVI.

JANUARY, 1927

No. 146

With The Indian and The Buffalo In Montana

By

Brigadier General EDWARD J. McCLERNAND

ABOUT the first of February, 1876, a number of adventurous spirits who had entered the Yellowstone country from the west in search of wealth, without any definite idea as to how it was to be obtained, found themselves besieged in a hastily built stockade on the north bank of the Yellowstone River not far from the mouth of the Big Horn. My recollection is that there were about one hundred in the party. Before building the stockade which they named Fort Pease after a former agent of the Crow Indians, they had passed over much of the country on the south side of the river between the Big Horn and the Rosebud, and were vigorously attacked by the Indians near the latter. One of their party, an unusually reliable man, George Herendeen, who will appear again in this story, told me the Sioux charged them recklessly and that he doubted for some time if they could be stopped. These adventurers hoped to establish a trading post at Fort Pease, but the Indians continued hostile and seemed determined either to kill or to drive them from the hunting grounds. One night a courier managed to elude the vigilance of the besiegers and hastened to Fort Ellis to ask for help. The squadron went promptly to the rescue of the hard pressed garrison and after a month's difficult marching in the midst of snow and cold, brought these men back to the settlements.

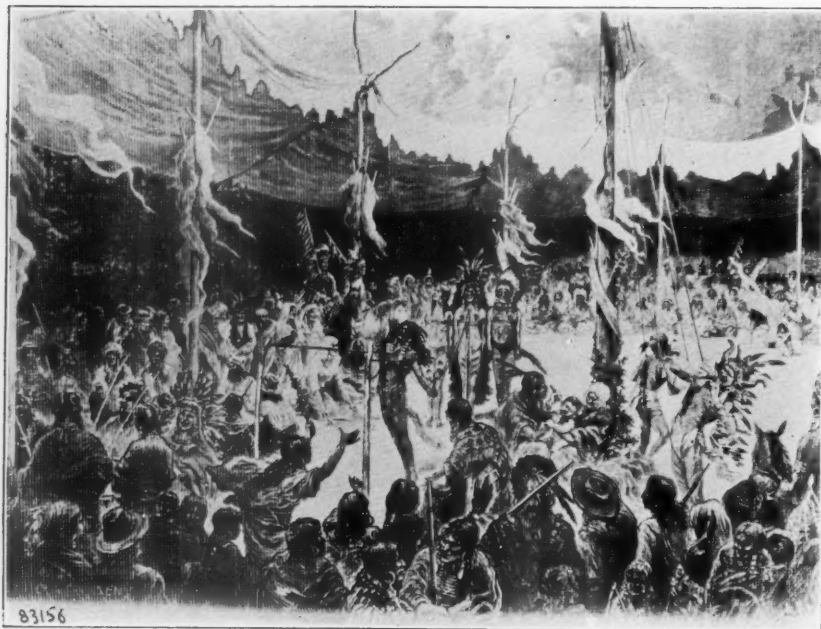
It is believed that this was the first movement made against the Sioux in 1876, antedating as it did by about six weeks, the attack by Colonel Joseph J. Reynolds from the Department of the Platte, on Crazy Horse and his band in

*The first installment of General McClernard's reminiscences was contained in the October number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, and dealt with the period from his graduation at West Point in 1870 to the close of 1875, when he was stationed with a squadron of the Second Cavalry at Fort Ellis, Montana.—EDITOR.

8-7

the Powder River country on March 17th. *

Scarcely had the squadron of the Second Cavalry from Fort Ellis returned to its station, when it was called upon to join in that memorable campaign in which without winning a single fight, if we except the rather indecisive affair



The Sun Dance

Medicine men made incisions in the skin and flesh of the chest or back of the dancers, inserted therein and tied a rawhide thong which was fastened to the top of the pole. The warriors dance and plunge until the thong tears through the flesh.

at Slim Buttes, our forces broke the backbone of the Indian power in the north. In this determined effort to subdue the Sioux, Cheyennes and Arapahoes, who as already stated, were known to camp along the lower Yellowstone and its tributaries, the government sent troops from the Department of the Platte under General George Crook and from the Department of Dakota under General Alfred H. Terry; in the latter's command General George A. Custer came from Fort Abraham Lincoln, near Bismarck, with the Seventh Cavalry, and General John Gibbon with six companies of the Seventh Infantry from

**Colonel Joseph J. Reynolds with ten troops of the Second and Third Cavalry, surprised and took possession of Crazy Horse's camp on Powder River, on the morning of March 17, 1876. He withdrew however, following a counter attack by the Sioux, and the Indians after pursuing the command for some distance, recaptured their pony herd.

The conduct of this affair by Colonel Reynolds was much criticized, all the honors being said to have rested with Crazy Horse, and the hostiles were greatly encouraged.—EDITOR.

Fort Shaw, Montana, and the four troops (F, G, H and L) of the Second Cavalry from Ellis, Major James S. Brisbin, commanding. Gibbon's command came to be known as the "Montana Column."

The cavalry left Ellis on the first of April; the six companies of the Seventh Infantry had already passed the post and were several days march in advance.

The route followed brought us to the Yellowstone just above the big bend, where the river changes from its northerly to its northeasterly course, a short distance above the mouth of Shield's River. A few miles farther on we ascended the foot hills of Sheep Mountain. From this point the view is both extensive and grand. Crazy Mountain lying back of Sheep Mountain, is detached from the main range across the Yellowstone and standing alone, it serves as a rallying point for the clouds, great masses of which usually hover around its lofty peaks rising to an altitude of 10,000 feet. Thousands of springs trickle down its rugged sides and are the sources of numerous streams. To the south, across the river, lies a range of high and rugged peaks frequently called "The Yellowstone Range," whose summits stand out in bold relief against the sky.

Ninety-seven miles from Ellis we overtook the infantry, and the united commands, under General Gibbon, then commenced the campaign in earnest. All along the Yellowstone, until the mouth of Clark's Fork was passed, great numbers of trout were caught; in fact the command almost lived on this delicious food.

A Narrow Escape

A short distance below "Baker's Battle Ground," previously described* it became necessary to cross to the south side of the river. Probably no one ever entered its swift current without wishing he would never be called upon to repeat the task. The ford was deep and swift. Lieutenant Charles B. Schofield's horse lost his footing, and both man and horse disappeared beneath the rapidly flowing waters. They were now above and now below the surface. It seemed that Schofield would be drowned. He lost his seat, but caught and clung desperately to one stirrup. Loaded down as he was with clothes and arms, it was impossible to swim. After drifting about a hundred yards, the horse regained his footing, and friends rushed in and rescued Schofield none too soon. He told me afterwards that he said to himself, "drowned in the Yellowstone—by etc."

Twenty-four miles below "Baker's Battle Ground," on the south side of the Yellowstone, there is a remarkable rock called "Pompey's Pillar," so named in 1806 by Captain William Clark, of Lewis and Clark fame. Nearly cylindrical in form, it can be ascended only from one point, the face elsewhere being vertical. It is of a gritty sandstone and 160 feet high, by 200 in diameter. From the top there is a grand view, especially to the east, south and west.

* See CAVALRY JOURNAL, October, 1926.

On the north side of the river, the view is somewhat limited by the bold, rugged sandstone bluffs about the same height as the pillar, and to which undoubtedly it was formerly attached. A few miles back, these bluffs break into rolling hills covered with scrubby pines presenting a most barren and



Brigadier General E. J. McClernand

uninviting appearance. These hills, extending back to the Musselshell River, and running along the Yellowstone for 40 miles, constitute its poorest section. The valley to the south is bordered by pretty foot hills, these in their turn,

rising to Pryor's Mountain, and to the snow covered range of the Big Horn farther to the south.

At a point on the Yellowstone 216 miles from Ellis and a short distance below the mouth of the Big Horn River, a courier overtook us with a dispatch for General Gibbon, directing him to halt at Fort Pease and there await further orders, giving the information that the columns under General Crook and General Custer would not take the field for some weeks. We moved on to Fort Pease a distance of two miles and went into camp immediately outside of it.

The next day was spent in policing the fort, of which it stood in great need. It was built of rough cottonwood logs, and was about 75 feet square with a bastion on the northeast and southwest corners.

A Scout to the South

While lying here, on the 24th of April, Captain Edward Ball with two troops (H and F) of the Second Cavalry, was ordered on a scout via the valley of the Big Horn, old Fort C. F. Smith, and Tullock's Fork. I did not belong to either troop, but as Acting Engineer Officer of the District of Montana, I was permitted to accompany the scouting party.

It was not desired that Captain Ball should engage the Indians, but only to discover, if possible, their whereabouts, at the same time keeping his command as well concealed as practicable.

The first night out our route passed through a very broken country. Frequently it became necessary to wind around and around to turn a precipice, or to cross a deep ravine. Our Crow Indian guide, however, was equal to the emergency and won the admiration of all by the masterly manner in which he conducted us in the darkness through these rugged hills. The next day while the command rested hidden among large cottonwood trees, a band of elk walked in among our horses, loose but hobbled, and quietly joined them in a friendly nibble on the green grass. That night we marched until midnight, and then halted to rest on the right bank of the Big Horn. There were only four officers in the command, and fearing that the enemy might be met with in overwhelming numbers, Captain Ball decided that, in addition to the customary sentinels, two officers should stand guard day and night; even while marching it was made their special duty to be on the lookout.

During the night last mentioned while Lieutenant Charles F. Roe, (later commander of the National Guard of New York) and I were on watch, a splashing was heard in the river, followed by a noise on the gravelly beach, such as ponies might make. We determined not to be stampeded, but to wait and learn more about the cause of the noise before awakening the command. Nothing could be seen, and finally the sound died away. The next morning it was discovered that a band of elk had crossed about 200 yards below us.

On the next day the 26th, while resting, buffalo in little bands of from ten to thirty, could be seen feeding in the valleys and foothills in all directions.

Some of them coming within a few yards of camp enabled us to procure meat with little trouble.

Old Fort Smith was reached on April 27th. This post was abandoned at the dictation of Red Cloud's defiant savages in 1868. The walls built of adobe were still standing, but the roofs had been burnt. The flagstaff lay across the parade ground, and from the manner in which it was cut, we supposed that it had been felled by Indians. The cemetery was least injured of all around



The Ruins of Old Fort C. F. Smith

the place, although a monument erected to Lieutenant Sigismund Sternberg and fifteen soldiers killed near the post, had been chipped by the Indians.* This monument standing alone in the wilderness and erected by sorrowing friends, was the last token of love for those who slept here beneath the sod, waiting long and perhaps in vain for the country they served to avenge their death.

Moving on towards the Little Big Horn River, (known to the Indians as "Greasy Grass") we passed through as fine a grazing country as can be found anywhere, combining hills and valleys, with everywhere a perfect mass of nutritious grasses. Numerous streams, fed by the melting snows of the Big Horn Mountains, (to the south) furnish clear and pure water at short intervals. At the time spoken of, the country was alive with game—elk, deer, buffalo, and antelope were seen in great numbers. It was a hunter's paradise.

*Lieut. Sternberg was killed in the celebrated Hayfield fight of August 1, 1867, in which a small detachment successfully resisted the attacks of a greatly superior force of Sioux, Cheyennes, and Arapahoes, and inflicted heavy losses.—EDITOR.

A Prophetic Taunt

While in bivouac on the Little Big Horn, near the spot where less than two months later Custer found the big village and made his last charge, an Indian scout took an empty cracker box and with a piece of charcoal made a lot of drawings thereon. "This," he said, "will tell the Sioux we are going to whip them;" and then filling the cracks with green grass, he added, "this will tell them we will do it this summer." Considering the hundreds of miles marched during that long campaign, it is a little strange that this taunt should have been left on the spot where the one desperate fight took place. In a conversation here with George Herendeen (previously mentioned), who accompanied us as a scout, I expressed the opinion that it would be as well for Captain Ball to meet and fight the Indians, but Herendeen demurred and said they might beat us. Later he was with Custer, but in Reno's part of the battle, and following that, we continued this talk, as will be related further on, in connection with what he saw there.

This scout ended on the 1st of May, without our seeing any Indians. The constant vigilance required of the officers told upon all, and we returned utterly tired out.

On the night of the 2nd and 3rd, the Crow scouts who, contrary to orders, failed to tie up their ponies, had them stolen by a small party of Sioux from down the river.

After the return of Captain Ball, as just related, and while awaiting the arrival of Crook and Custer in the field of operations, General Gibbon moved slowly down the Yellowstone to a large bottom opposite the mouth of the Rosebud. From this point I was sent as a member of a small detachment to reconnoiter down the north bank of the river to discover, if possible, the whereabouts of the enemy. Of course, we kept concealed as much as practicable, while keeping our eyes open and our field glasses in frequent use. A few miles out from camp, we espied a small war party of six or eight, moving covertly through the hills back of the bluffs toward Gibbon's camp. They apparently did not see us and we assumed that they were bent on stealing horses. Their presence did not give us much concern for, although our animals at camp were turned out to graze, hobbles or sidelines were placed on the horses, and the mules were held between the latter and the tents. Moreover, we had lived in the Indian country too long to be caught napping in guarding our stock.

Our reconnaissance was continued for several days and to a point opposite the mouth of Tongue River. Here we hid our horses and crept along on our stomachs to the edge of the high bluff and peered down upon the valley where later Fort Keogh and Miles City were built. Our position permitted us to see a long distance up Tongue River, but no Indians were in sight. Considerable

disappointment was felt, as we had cherished the hope that a large village would be found here.

As our absence had been prolonged beyond expectation, and as our rations were running low, we took the back trail. In fact, real hunger was making itself felt, when a deer was killed, and the meat roasted over an open fire. To accomplish this we cut some willow twigs, and sharpening the smaller ends ran them through strips of meat, with pieces of fat between the lean. The large end of the twig was then forced into the ground at such a distance from the fire as to permit the meat, the weight of which bent the switch, to hang over and just above the live coals. It was cooked deliciously and no king ever had a better supper.

Soon after the scouting party last referred to, returned to Gibbon's camp, the General learned through his Crow scouts that there were strong indications of a large village of hostiles a short distance up the Rosebud. He decided to cross the Yellowstone and attack. Due to the spring floods the river was much too high to be forded, and the current was swift and the water cold. Difficulty was experienced in making the cavalry horses take to the water and swim across, and finally a number were tied head and tail, with a lariat fastened into the halter ring of the first horse. The other end of the lariat was held by a man in a row boat, of which we had several. The fastened animals were thus led into the stream, but as soon as the horse on the lariat entered the main current, he pulled loose from the soldier in the boat and turned down stream, followed, of course, by those in rear. To make a long story short, they were soon swimming in a circle and six or eight were drowned, when the attempt to cross was reluctantly given up.

During this period, small parties of hostile Indians hovered around camp from time to time, but scampered off at the first signs of pursuit. On June 5th, Gibbon's march down the Yellowstone valley was renewed in order to meet troops that our information by mail via Fort Ellis, led us to believe would be coming up the valley about this time, and was continued beyond the mouth of Tongue River to a point a little below Buffalo Rapids, where, on the 9th, General Terry arrived on the steamboat *Far West*. He informed us that General Custer was on Powder River, and would move up the south side of the Yellowstone. We were ordered to take the back trail and take position opposite the mouth of the Rosebud. The distance to be covered was about fifty miles. The rains were heavy, and Sunday Creek was difficult to cross. The cavalry of the Montana Column reached its assigned position on the 13th, and the infantry the following day.

While Gibbon's command was lying at this point, that is, opposite the mouth of the Rosebud, on the 17th of June, the Crow scouts reported a big dust on the Rosebud. Shortly afterward a number of horsemen appeared on the opposite bank of the Yellowstone, two and one-half miles above. By means of signals, General Gibbon learned that it was Major Marcus A. Reno with six troops of the Seventh Cavalry. The river was so broad that we had to use

field glasses to read the signals. They had been scouting on Powder and Tongue Rivers, and on Rosebud Creek. No Indians had been seen, but a large trail had been found leading toward the Little Big Horn.*



Photo by Barry

Major Marcus A. Reno

At the close of the Civil War, Major Reno was mustered out as a colonel of cavalry; appointed Major, 7th Cavalry in 1868. Dismissed by sentence of a G. C. M., April 1, 1880.

*On this day, June 17, General Crook, less than fifty miles distant, was having his indecisive fight on the Rosebud with Crazy Horse's band of Cheyennes and Sioux. Crazy Horse attacked Crook's force early in the morning and the fight lasted a good part of the day. The Indians were eventually repulsed and driven back and Crook camped for the night on the battlefield. The next morning he withdrew to his supply camp on Goose Creek (south fork of Tongue River) to await re-enforcements.

Cyrus Townsend Brady says: "The battle was in one sense a victory for the white soldiers in that they drove the Indians from the field, forcing them back at least five miles. In another and a more definite sense, it was a decided victory for Crazy Horse. He had fought Crook to a standstill; he had forced him back to his base of supplies; he had stopped the further progress of that expedition; he had protected his villages, and had withdrawn his army in good order."

Incidentally, Crazy Horse, with about 1500 warriors, was enabled to effect a junction with the large body of hostiles on the Little Big Horn in time to defeat the Seventh Cavalry just eight days later. General Terry heard nothing of this Rosebud fight for several weeks.

Crook's force consisted of ten troops of the Third Cavalry under Colonel A. W. Evans, and five of the Second under Major H. E. Noyes, the whole, some 900 in number, being commanded by Colonel William B. Royall of the Third. There were also three companies of the Ninth Infantry and two of the Fourth, a total of 200. Crook, in addition, had 280 Crow and Shoshone Indian scouts.—EDITOR.

Arrival of General Custer

On the 21st, the *Far West*, with General Terry on board, arrived, and orders were given us to proceed at once to Fort Pease. General Terry commanded the Department of Dakota, and therefore he also commanded both Gibbon and Custer. This movement had in part been anticipated, and we were all packed and ready to start. While passing the mouth of the Rosebud on this day soon after our start, a big dust was seen in the direction of Big Wolf Mountains, and soon General Custer with the Seventh Cavalry was seen coming over the hills on the south bank of the Yellowstone. As compared to the showing made by Gibbon's force when on the march, Custer's column looked large and imposing.

Terry, Gibbon and Custer held a conference on the boat.

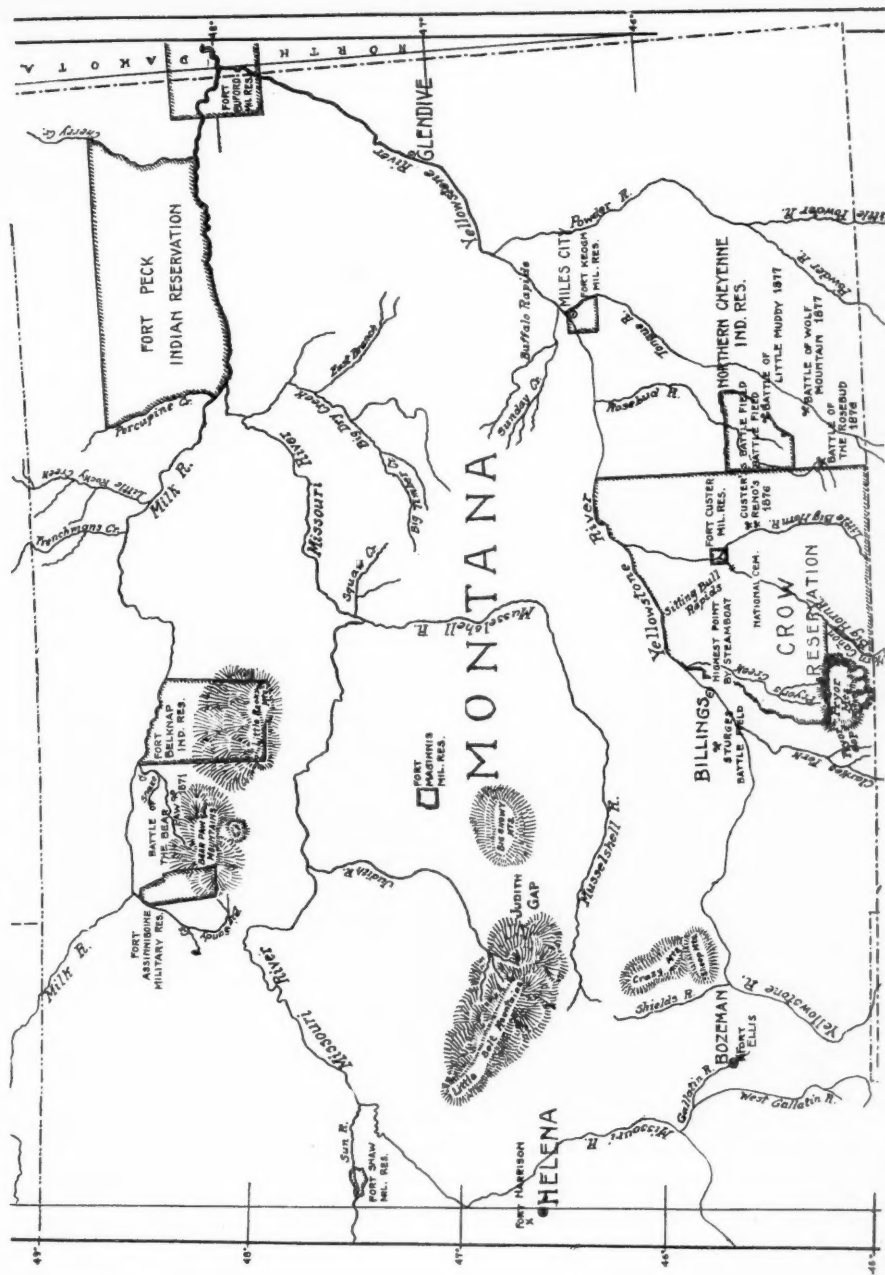
It had been learned that the Indian trail led from the Rosebud toward the Little Big Horn.* General Custer was ordered to follow the trail, with certain instructions added, while General Gibbon was to march back along the north bank of the Yellowstone and to cross that river, on the *Far West*, a few miles below the mouth of the Big Horn, General Gibbon told me that just as the conference broke up, he said in substance to General Custer—"Now Custer do not be selfish, give us a chance to get into the fight." General Custer laughed but made no reply. Each command made immediate preparation for the march. My understanding as a staff officer to General Gibbon was, that after crossing the Yellowstone, he (Gibbon) was to push for the Little Big Horn near its mouth, so as to get below the Indians, if on that stream, while General Custer struck them from above.

Before breaking camp, Gibbon loaned Custer several scouts, including George Herendeen, already mentioned, several Crow Indians and Mitch Bouyer, a half-breed, whose mother was, if I remember correctly, a Sioux, while his father was a French-Canadian. Mitch had married a Crow woman and lived with her tribe. He had an extensive knowledge of the habits of the Northern Indians, and had been valuable to us. He said on many occasions in 1876 and previously, that if we ever attacked a large Sioux village, we would do well to prepare for a big fight.**

*Major Reno had followed that trail about forty miles above the mouth of the Rosebud and then returned. This was the *latest* information. We passed his farthest south, on our second day's march, June 23.—E. S. GODFREY. (This and subsequent comments by General E. G. Godfrey were made after reaching the manuscript of this article.—EDITOR.)

**I feel sure that General Custer was obsessed with the idea that the hostiles would not "stand," knowing that Crook was in the field; that they probably knew Terry's and Gibbon's columns had united; that Gibbon's column had not been seriously menaced during the two and one-half months it had been in their vicinage; were factors that made him feel that the hostiles had not been strongly re-enforced from the agencies, and that they would scatter and break for the agencies.

Here comes up a remarkable situation.—May 29th, General Sheridan wired Crook: "Have already anticipated movement of Indians from Agencies, and have made application



Fort Pease was at the mouth of the Big Horn River. Buffalo Rapids was the farthest point reached by the Montana column.

The Montana column had the longer route assigned to it and a big and high river to cross, and few, if any, in it thought that General Custer would wait for us or indeed for any one not under his command. A battery, or perhaps I should say, a platoon of Gatling guns, under Lieutenant William H. Low, Jr., of the infantry, an excellent officer, was transferred at Custer's request from his force to Gibbon's because he feared it would delay him.** He could have taken the guns as easily as Gibbon, for the latter crossed a more difficult country, and their presence might have been of incalculable value in the catastrophe that followed.

The *Far West* arrived at 6:00 A. M. on June 24th, General Terry was aboard and announced his intentions of accompanying our column.

Gibbon detached one company to guard his trains near Fort Pease and crossed the Yellowstone with the balance of his command, on the 24th at 5:30 P. M. We made camp on Tullock's Fork near its mouth, about four miles from Pease. General Gibbon, due to temporary illness, remained on the *Far West* which was ordered to proceed up the Big Horn if possible, and meet us at the mouth of the Little Big Horn. Pack transportation only was taken.

Up the Big Horn

Starting at 5:45 A. M. on the 25th, Terry with the Montana column moved up Tullock's Fork. The General used me as a staff officer, and as I had recently passed over the ground, directed me to select the trail. It was my intention to follow along the little stream to a point three or four miles short of where Captain Ball struck it on April 29th, during his scout previously mentioned, then turn to the right and cross the divide between Tullock's Fork and the Little Big Horn River, so as to reach the latter stream about five miles above its junction with the Big Horn. Along that route the distance from our camp of the night of the 24-25th, to the Little Big Horn, would have been about 47

to General Sherman to be permitted to control Indians at all Agencies, so that none can go out and no hostiles or families can come in except in unconditional surrender."***** The following despatch was sent June 6: Headquarters Military Division of the Missouri, Chicago, Illinois, June 6, 1876, Ruggles, Major Geo. D., St. Paul, Minn. Courier from Red Cloud Agency reports at Laramie yesterday that Yellow Robe arrived at Agency yesterday, six days from hostile camp. He says that eighteen hundred lodges are on the Rosebud and about to leave for Powder River below the point of Crazy Horse's fight. (March 17) Says they will fight and have about three thousand (3000) warriors. This is for your information. M. V. Sheridan, Lt. Col., A. D. C. Captain John G. Bourke relates that on June 8 General Crook received information of the heavy exodus of warriors from the Agencies. General Terry did not receive that information until July 14, nearly three weeks after the battle, and just five weeks later than by Crook! Why this delay? I have never heard any explanation. In his *Galaxy Magazine* articles and his *My Life on the Plains* (1874), General Custer had scathingly arraigned the "Indian Ring" for our "Indian Troubles." Was this delay manipulated by the "Indian Ring" for a sinister purpose?—E. S. GODFREY.

**These gatling guns were hauled by condemned cavalry horses and could not possibly keep up with the cavalry command for any length of time.—E. S. GODFREY.



General George Crook

Known as "Nantan Lupan" (Grey Wolf) to the Indians, became a major general of volunteers during the Civil War. After the war he was appointed a major of infantry, and by 1873 had risen to the grade of brigadier general, which he held until 1888, when he was promoted to a major generalcy. His force from the Department of the Platte was supposed to co-operate with those of Terry and Gibbon in the 1876 campaign, but his practical defeat by Crazy Horse on the Rosebud, June 17, 1876, eliminated him from the campaign for almost two months.

or 48 miles, and to the top of the divide between it and Tullock's Fork, considerably less; probably about forty miles or less.

I am dwelling somewhat upon details here in view of the tragedy we are now approaching. With fair marching we would have reached the summit of the said divide by not later than 10:00 o'clock on the morning of the 26th; the cavalry probably would have been there by 8:00 o'clock. From the summit we would have commanded an excellent view for 12 or 15 miles up the valley of the Little Big Horn, and with our glasses would have been able, I think, to pick up sections of the Indian village, about 10 miles away, attacked the day before by the Seventh Cavalry. We would have been too late to save Custer, but probably the sight of our near approach would have caused the enemy to cease the attack on Reno some hours earlier than he did.

The trail we were following along Tullock's Fork crossed that small stream frequently, but was nevertheless quite a good one, although the battery of Gatling guns found some trouble now and then at the crossings; nothing though that caused serious difficulty or delay. However, after passing up the creek for 3.3 miles General Terry sent word to me that he intended to ascend the divide between the Fork and the Big Horn River, and follow it to the mouth of the Little Big Horn. In adopting this course the General accepted the advice of a civilian scout, "Muggins" Taylor, in Gibbon's employ. Taylor was not familiar with the trail along the Fork, or with the country between it and the Big Horn. He was, in general terms, a good and brave man, who had long lived near the Indian frontier, but mostly in small towns, and was in no sense an experienced "plainsman."

It is only fair to say that usually a good trail can be found along the top of a divide between two streams, but this rule does not apply where "bad lands" intervene, as was the case in the country selected by Taylor. Once having reached the summit of the divide, it became absolutely necessary to follow it, although it was very narrow and tortuous. Rough ravines, hundreds of feet deep, and filled with scrubby pines, ran back almost to the summit from both sides. The day was excessively warm, and the infantry, toiling along over the rough ground, suffered greatly for water, which was not found at any place on the divide.

After marching 21.35 miles, and after descending a long and precipitous hill, where it was necessary to fasten many lariats together, tie them to the Gatling gun carriages, and then lower the latter by hand, the cavalry reached the Big Horn where the troopers and their mounts first quenched their own intense thirst, after which many canteens were filled and sent back to the weary and even more thirsty foot troops.

After a few minutes delay the cavalry again moved forward, climbed a high hill and halted in a large grove of cottonwood trees on the east bank of the Big Horn to await the arrival of the infantry. When the latter came up it was evident that they were completely exhausted after the day's march of

23.65 miles. It was not the length of the journey that drained, temporarily, their vitality, but the many ascents and descents of high hills, and the absence of water.

At 4:30 P. M. rain began to fall heavily, but nevertheless, General Terry, who was anxious to get in the immediate vicinity of the Little Big Horn as soon as possible, decided to push on with the cavalry and the battery, leaving the infantry to follow the next morning. At 5:15 P. M. we were again in the saddle. Our course took us over rough hills and across deep ravines. Night came on very dark and the rain continued to fall dismally until 10:30 P. M. It was difficult for those parts of the column in rear to see those in their front. The battery, especially, had great difficulty in keeping up. Several times it was lost and only brought back by repeated trumpet calls. It was impossible, due to the darkness, to follow a straight course even when the nature of the country would have permitted it, and the General decided that we were taxing the strength of the command to small gain. At midnight, he halted where some water was standing in holes, and near which the grass was fortunately tolerably good, for our animals were in sore need of food. There was also a little wood nearby, but to prevent all danger of signaling our approach, no fires were permitted, and we passed what remained of the night sitting or tramping about in the mud, chilled to the bone in our wet clothing. We had marched 12.10 miles after parting from the infantry, and 35.75 during the day.

When daylight came, fires were authorized and coffee made, to the great benefit of the command. We delayed in bivouac to permit the infantry to somewhat close the gap between us, and did not take up the march until 9:15 A. M. The column soon reached quite a broad valley, destitute of trees, and in which there was doubtless a considerable stream in the early spring, fed by the melting snows, but at the time of our visit the water course was dry, except for such moisture as might be expected from the rain of the night before. Nevertheless, Scout Taylor told General Terry that the ravine in our front was the Little Big Horn River, the water of which sank near its mouth, or as he expressed it,—“which ran dry at its mouth.” To this statement I strongly protested, and said to the General that while I had not actually gone to the mouth of the river on the scout under Captain Ball some two months earlier, we were within ten or twelve miles of its junction with the Big Horn, and that from the divide to the east I had, with the aid of my field glasses, followed its course to the junction of the two rivers, and that beyond question it was a fine flowing stream, and well timbered. My statements were so positive that the General was convinced, and we again moved forward, and from the top of the next ridge, two or three miles in advance, we looked down upon the beautiful little valley and clear running stream we had been seeking, with the junction of the two rivers but a short distance to our right and front. General Terry seemed much pleased, saying in substance,—“Well! I have kept faith with Custer; I promised to be here today.”

First News of Custer

While on the ridge just mentioned, Lieutenant James H. Bradley, Seventh Infantry, in charge of scouts, brought in word that two of our Crow Indians who had been sent with Custer, when the commands parted at the mouth of the Rosebud, were on the opposite side of the Big Horn, and had called across



A Prototype of the Far West

Photo by Barry

The *Far West*, after the wounded from the battle were put aboard, left on the morning of June 30 and steamed 53 miles to the mouth of the Big Horn, arriving there in the afternoon. It lay there until the late afternoon of July 3 in order to ferry General Gibbon's command to the opposite bank of the river. Leaving at 5:00 P. M. July 3, it made, in order to save the wounded, a record breaking trip down the Yellowstone and the Missouri. Going at full speed, day and night, in a narrow and crooked channel with no shore lights, bumping into the shore, caroming off sand bars, it arrived at Bismarck, a distance of nearly one thousand miles, at 11:00 P. M., July 5. This time of 54 hours, so far as known, has never been equalled on the Missouri or any of its tributaries. Grant Marsh, the skipper of the *Far West*, was a well-known Missouri River captain and the pioneer navigator of the Big Horn.

that General Custer's command had been badly beaten the day before, and he had been killed, in a fight about 18 miles away up the Little Big Horn. They said that his men were shot down like buffaloes, and urged us to go no farther,

saying that the Sioux would kill all of us. They refused to rejoin.

At this time a big smoke was seen up the valley of the Little Big Horn, but the report of the Crows was not generally believed. Many thought that the smoke arose from the Indian village and that Custer was burning it. The Crows said the Sioux had fired the grass.

As said, the statement of the two Crow scouts was not generally accepted. Many in our column were willing to admit that Custer's advance guard might have been driven back, but scoffed at the idea of his entire regiment's having been beaten. In fact, Custer commanded the admiration and excited the enthusiasm of most of the young men in the Army. His well known reputation for courage and dash was contagious and caught the fancy even of those among us who had never met him. It is recalled that one young officer attached to General Terry's Headquarters, Lieutenant Thompson of the Sixth Infantry, if I remember correctly, announced that of course Custer had beaten the Indians and was now fifty miles away in pursuit. Many undoubtedly thought likewise. My Captain, James N. Whelan, fell into general disfavor because he insisted that the Crows were reliable and that their report should be accepted. I do not know what General Terry thought; so far as I know he kept his opinion to himself.

General Gibbon came up from the *Far West* about this time and reported that the steamboat with 160 tons of freight was ascending the Big Horn without difficulty. The infantry arrived about 11:00 A. M., and Gibbon's united command moved down the little divide and started up the valley of the Little Big Horn. The column halted, as nearly as I can remember, at 1:00 P. M. about three miles from the mouth of the river, where we had something to eat. The river was about twenty yards wide and two and one-half feet deep and there were beautiful groves of cottonwood and ash along the banks.

The infantry had marched 18.85 miles during the morning. The distances I am giving here were determined by two odometers under charge of Sergeant Becker of the Engineer Corps, one fastened to either wheel of a light cart. He acted as my assistant, and was a thoroughly reliable man as well as an expert topographer. He made a sketch of the route followed each day and submitted it for approval. In this way the character of the country was impressed upon my mind and is readily recalled. Moreover, Fort Custer was built in 1877 and 1878 on the bluffs just above where the rivers unite, and I was stationed there from the summer of 1878 to June, 1879. Naturally, I availed myself of the opportunity this offered to study the topography and to refresh my memory of the country marched over on June 26, 1876, and the day following. Again, many of the details I am now reciting are taken from my official report as Engineer Officer of the District of Montana, submitted in the form of a journal in the autumn of 1876, and published in the report of the Chief of Engineers of the Army for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1877. For these

reasons I can, perhaps, claim unusual accuracy for my statements concerning the days under discussion.

General Terry's Anxiety

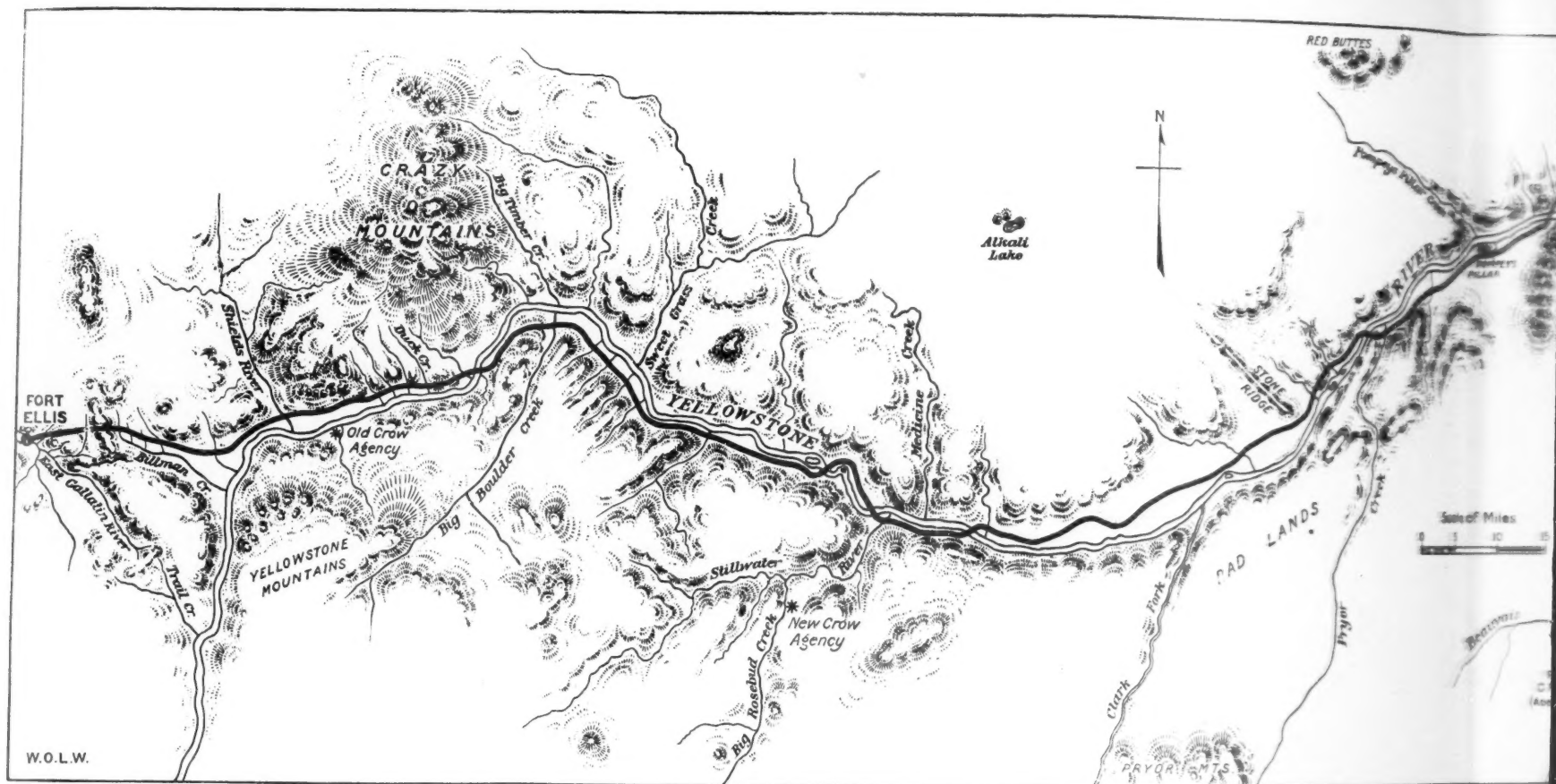
While Gibbon's column was thus halted in the valley some three miles above the mouth of the Little Big Horn, General Terry doubtless expected and had every reason to expect, that Custer, as his successor in command, would spare no effort to communicate with him. He seemed surprised and mystified by the fact that no report had been received, and was unmistakably anxious. He finally determined to try and communicate by courier with Custer. Two officers, each without the knowledge of the other, volunteered to attempt to get through with his message, but he would not consent, saying that the law and the customs of the service did not provide any adequate reward for such risk on the part of an officer, and that he preferred to make it a matter of monetary consideration. It may be said here that commissioning by brevet and the award of the Medal of Honor, the only medal known at that time, had both practically fallen into disuse, and that a sense of duty performed and the approbation of his comrades, was the only compensation an officer could reasonably expect for the performance of unusual and hazardous service.

The General then offered a reward of \$500.00 for the delivery of a message to Custer, and Muggins Taylor undertook the task. Taylor was riding a strong horse in fair flesh, but not fast. He tried to exchange him for a fleetier animal, but did not succeed. In fact, most of the horses of the Second Cavalry, largely because of long field service and short rations of grain, were low in flesh and more or less unfitted for a long and rapid gallop.

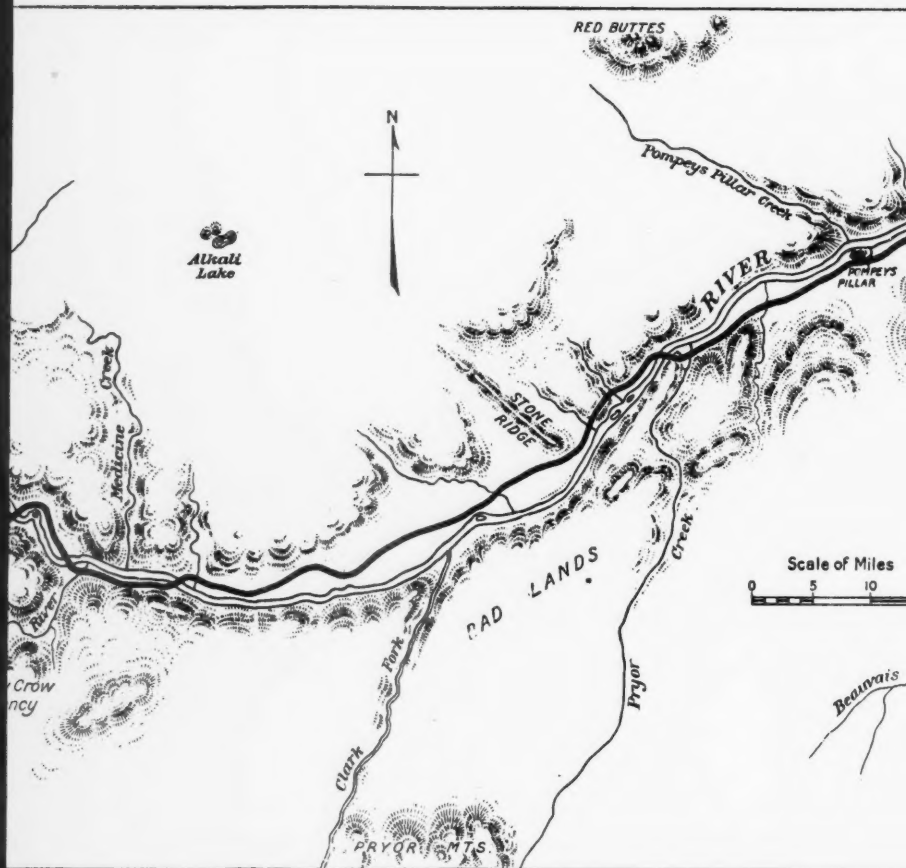
Taylor started about 3 p. m. and afterwards told me that in his advance he kept hidden as much as possible in the hills of the divide to the west. His statement is not repeated here in any spirit of criticism, for in truth the success of his mission, as well as his personal safety, depended upon his avoiding any party, or parties, of the enemy interposed between the two parts of Terry's command. In a measure, however, it does account for his not getting much farther up the valley than Terry himself went that evening.

The Advance Resumed

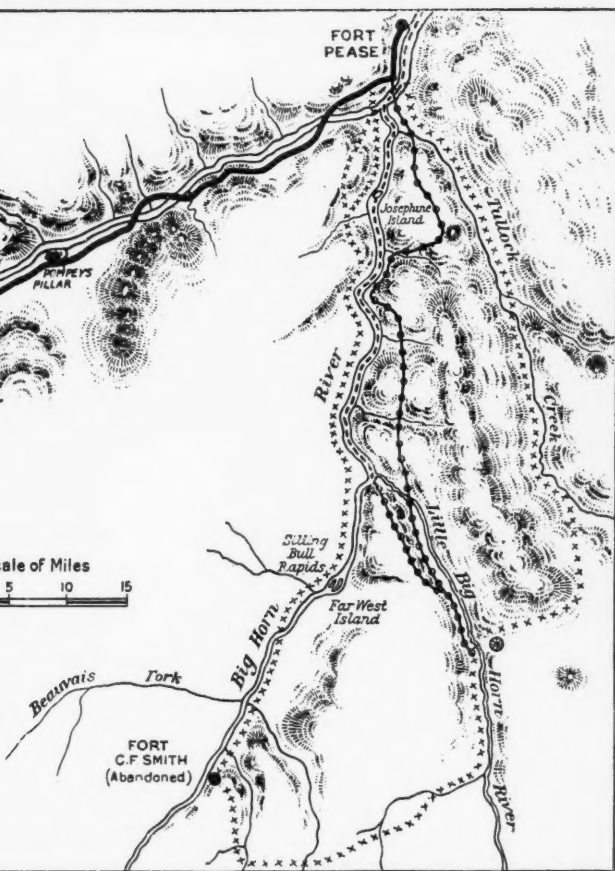
The infantry having rested their legs and the horses having had a nibble of the luxuriant grass, the Montana column, at 5:00 p. m. renewed its advance. Our route took us through the beautiful valley to the west of the river, and for miles from up the stream, the column was in plain view of anyone who cared to look. After advancing about five miles, twelve or fifteen ponies were found grazing in the valley; shortly afterward several Indians were seen hovering around our front, and a few shots were fired at Troop F, under Lieutenant Charles F. Roe, which had been sent up on the low hills or bluffs



The heavy line indicates the route of the Montana column eastward from Fort Ellis. The big bend of the Yellowstone referred to in the text is north of the Yellowstone Mountains. The scene of the battle is indicated by a circle with spokes. The route of Captain Ball's scout is indicated by crosses. That of General Gibbon's column south from Fort Pease in the Little Big Horn expedition is indicated by a heavy line broken by small circles. The course of the Fort



Fort Ellis. The big bend of the Yellowstone referred to in the text is north of the Yellowstone. The heavy line indicating the route crosses the Yellowstone. The route of Captain Ball's scout and the Big Horn expedition is indicated by a heavy line broken by small circles. The course of the



Courtesy of Mr. Robert Bruce

Yellowstone Mountains. Lieut. Schofield's narrow
all's scout to old Fort C. F. Smith is indicated
rse of the *Far West* up the Big Horn is indicated

to the west, to cover the right flank of the column.

Our pace while marching was fairly good, but frequent halts were made to enable the officers with the Headquarters to sweep the country with their field glasses in the hope of sighting Custer, or failing in that, at least to pick up the main body of the enemy, if still nearby.

As the evening advanced several officers saw through their glasses on the hills farther up and across the river, objects that suggested to them buffaloes lying down. As twilight, aided by smoke and possibly dust, was enveloping us, there appeared in the distance to the right and front, something looking like a long column of cavalry. Gibbon, who exercised the immediate control of our troops, held his small force well in hand, prepared to fight it, if need be, as a unit and for all it was worth; and here let me say that many of us expected, in case of battle, that our Gatling guns would have a marked demoralizing effect on the enemy.

It was rapidly growing dark when Muggins Taylor returned and said what we saw in the distance was Custer and his cavalry. He was angry and excited, saying that some of Custer's Indian scouts had ridden out from the column and fired on him, and he swore he would kill them when we joined forces. Captain Hughes of General Terry's staff said to his chief,—"For God's sake, General, let us push on." The General replied,—"No, Hughes, if that supposed column be Custer's and he is in the same doubt that we are, we may fire into each other in the night."

Night entirely overtook us before anything definite was learned of Custer's fate, but even the most sanguine commenced to doubt that he had been victorious. Sometime between 8:00 and 9:00 P. M., we turned from near the hills well into the center of the valley and went into bivouac. The infantry had covered during the day, 29.10 miles, a very considerable part of the distance having been across steep hills.

The command formed a hollow square with the Gatling guns placed to the best advantage to repel a possible attack. The troops of cavalry were sent one at a time to water at the river, a half mile or more away. Each troop carried utensils with which to bring back water. After supper, such as it was, the entire command settled down for the night to await anxiously for daylight and what the next day might bring forth. Whatever the result of Custer's fight had been, everyone anticipated another on the morrow.

The night passed quietly and dawn found us astir. No report had been received from Custer or his command, notwithstanding that on the previous afternoon, our column had passed several hours in the open valley, and all was uncertainty. General Terry decided to move farther along the river, with scouting detachments on the hills on either side. From the position of our bivouac the view up the valley was shut off a mile and a half or so away, by the trees that bordered the river as it swept completely across the valley we were in, from the high bluffs on the east to the lower ones to the west,

and then turned back again to run along the eastern bluffs. These trees had likewise limited our view on the afternoon of the day before.

Making an early start on the 27th, we soon approached the timber along the river as it crossed and re-crossed the valley, and here a little delay occurred as the advance guard reconnoitered among the trees to avoid a possible ambush. Advancing again we had gone but a short distance when two tepees were seen through the trees, and ascending the low sandstone bluffs at the extreme western sweep of the Little Big Horn, we saw in our immediate front a large bottom where an immense Indian village had stood but a few hours before. A few tepees were still standing, in which several dead Indians were found. The enemy had evidently left in haste; numerous buffalo-ropes, blankets, tepee-poles, and camp utensils were scattered over the ground, together with great quantities of dried meat. Fifty or sixty ponies had also been left behind. A buckskin shirt, a garment much affected on the plains in those days by some officers, was found with the name "Sturgis" on it. It was discolored by blood stains, and had been pierced in two places by a bullet. It was assumed to have been the property of Lieutenant James G. Sturgis of the Seventh Cavalry. I sighted a large American horse grazing about one-fourth of a mile away in the valley, and as my horse was thin and weak, I galloped over to the free animal intending to transfer my saddle to him, but found that he had been wounded and was unserviceable. He was branded "U.S." I also observed that many trails of pony tracks and lodge poles converged into a wide ravine that led away in the general direction of old Fort Smith.

A Tragic Message

On returning to Headquarters I found my friends turning their field glasses on the hills in every direction in the hope of discovering friend or foe, or both, but without avail. The fate of Custer was now more puzzling than ever. Our chief, General Terry, was calm but serious. He evidently was weighing the situation seriously.

All were horrified by a message received about this time from Lieutenant Bradley, our chief of scouts, saying that he had counted 196 dead cavalrymen on the hills across the river. The objects seen the day before looking like buffaloes lying down, were probably dead comrades and their horses.

The situation, gloomy as it had been, was made immensely more so by Bradley's report. The responsibilities of our General increased, and it is thought that the sympathy of all present went out to him as he pondered the course to pursue. The stronger of his two commands had evidently met with a grave defeat; 196 were accounted for, but where were the others, and were they living or dead? If his stronger column had been defeated, what would be the result if the fight should be renewed with the weaker one? All felt that General Terry was more than willing to act, and to fight if opportunity offered, but who could say where he should go, and what had become of the victorious enemy.

Now two horsemen are seen dashing toward us from up the valley. Apparently we had at last made our presence known to our surviving comrades of the Seventh Cavalry, but not before we had stood upon the battlefield and had counted their dead on the hills across the river, and were entering into the bottom where the village had stood the day before. As the hurrying riders drew nearer, we discovered they were riding bare-back, then that they were white men, and finally two lieutenants, George D. Wallace and Luther R. Hare, sent by Major Reno, second in command to Custer, to tell of the desperate fight by his own detachment, and to point out their present position on the bluffs up, and across, the river.

"Where is Custer," they were asked. Wallace replied, "The last we saw of him he was going along that high bluff (pointing in a general direction to a point on the bluffs down stream from the position where he had located Reno), toward the lower end of the village. He took off his hat and waved to us. We do not know where he is now." "We have found him," said General Terry, his eyes filling with tears, for all now felt the truth of the statement shouted to us by our Crow scouts from across the Big Horn, and fully expected to find Custer's remains on the stricken field discovered by Bradley.

Reno's messengers sat their horses aghast at the information given them, and seemed slow to grasp the fact that their detachment had not played the major role in the drama that had been enacted.

Leaving Custer and his companions in death on the hills where we had found them, we placed ourselves under the guidance of Wallace and Hare to be taken to those of our comrades who had survived the catastrophe. They led us along the valley for some three and a half or four miles, where the village had stood the day before, toward some timber that stretched nearly across the bottom above, much as did that already described cross the valley at the lower end of the village, and which as stated, had obstructed our view on the previous afternoon. There was perhaps a quarter or half mile of smooth, open ground between the extreme western sweep of the timber we were approaching and the bluffs to the west, and we were told that it was through this opening that Reno's men first saw the village. The bluffs spoken of as lying to the west, may perhaps be more properly mentioned as hills, for their ascent was gradual and their surface grass covered, while those on the right bank of the stream were not only high but quite precipitous, especially opposite what had been the upper end of the village; toward the middle of the Indian camp their slopes became more gradual, and descended into a broad coulee, that led to a good crossing of the river, while at the extreme lower end of the village the eastern bluffs were also comparatively low, at least as compared with those above and opposite where Reno first sighted the Indian camp ground.

Thus the village had been quite well concealed from observation at a distance by the bluffs to the east and west, and the timber immediately above and below it in the valley. It is important that the reader carry this picture



Courtesy of Mr. Robert Bruce

General John Gibbon

Commander of the Montana column, was mustered out at the end of the Civil War as a major general of volunteers and then was appointed colonel of infantry, which grade he held until 1885, when he was promoted to a brigadier generalcy.

in his mind, and for his further information it may be added that the general direction of the Little Big Horn River is northeasterly as far as the battlefield, where it changes and follows a northwesterly course to its junction with the Big Horn. Between these two streams lies a plateau of undulating prairie, while between the Little Big Horn and the Rosebud, the divide, which was crossed by Custer in his advance toward the savages, is rough and broken, of considerable elevation, with precipitous hills and deep, narrow gulches.

As our conductors led us over the former camp ground, they informed us that Reno's fight had opened in the valley and that the point of timber we were approaching marked the extreme down stream limit of his advance. Along the line of Reno's retreat to the hills, from his first position in the bottom, was a sickening sight. The dead were horribly mutilated.

Much was said later by Major Reno and others about their ability to have taken care of themselves without Gibbon's assistance, but this I know, strong men exhibited every evidence of joy as we ascended the bluff and took them by the hand, and one friend told me that he had never expected to see another sun go down.

As our readers are now following with us across part of the battlefield, it will be well to go back a little and place ourselves under the leadership of Custer, and accompany him in his fairly rapid march from the time he parted from Gibbon at the mouth of the Rosebud to the point on the bluffs where, as Wallace told us, he was last seen. To that point we may follow with sufficient detail, but beyond that, all that has been written is largely conjecture. The writer has no intention of giving a minute account of the battle of the Little Big Horn, and is content to leave the details of that sanguinary conflict to be told by Godfrey and others of the Seventh Cavalry who faced death there. Nevertheless, what the Montana column found on the 26th and 27th on the banks of that stream is a part of the column's own history and can properly be told here.

General E. S. Godfrey was a lieutenant and a troop commander under Custer in his march against the Indians, and all who wish to make a close study of the fight that followed will do well to read his account under the title of "General George A. Custer and the Battle of the Little Big Horn." * All who know Godfrey will accept implicitly his statement of facts that fell under his observation, and as I know of no better source than the statements of Wallace and Hare to General Terry, and Godfrey's printed story, from which to gather information about what actually befell Reno's command, I shall follow them quite closely. As the account of Custer's death struggle has never been written by an eye witness, and as I was among the first to examine his battlefield while the dead still rested where they fell, perhaps my con-

*Published in the *Century Magazine*, January, 1892. Attention is also invited to the very comprehensive account by Lieutenant Colonel W. A. Graham J. A. G., entitled *The Story of the Little Big Horn*, which was published in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* of July, 1926, five months after the death of General McClelland.—EDITOR.

jecture of what occurred after he separated from his comrades who survived may be as good as another's; or at least it may be of interest to those who wish to study the engagement from every point of view.

I was not only among the first to visit the fatal field where Custer fell, but I also superintended the making of a considerable portion of the map thereof that will be found with the report of Lieutenant Edward Maguire, Chief Engineer, Department of Dakota, printed with the report of the Chief of Engineers of the Army for 1876. It is perhaps the best map that has been made of the field. I started the survey immediately upon the completion of our short march with Wallace and Hare to the foot of "Reno Hill," and instructed my assistant, Sergeant Becker, as to the ground to be covered. He commenced the work at once and had covered about one-third of the territory concerned, when my superior, Lieutenant Maguire, said to General Terry that he thought the mapping of the battlefield should be under his own (Maguire's) supervision. The General assented and I was verbally relieved as Assistant Engineer Officer. I had a little feeling about this for I recognized that some distinction might accrue from making the map, and as I had started the survey and, moreover, had superintended for several months, the work of mapping our trail and writing up the journal of our marches, it did seem that I might have been permitted to complete the task in hand. However my disappointment was less than it would have been had the duties of Engineer Officer of the District of Montana been congenial to me. Notwithstanding my high regard and affection for General Gibbon, the Commanding Officer of the District, I did not find them so and in truth was glad to part with them. The reader will appreciate my feelings when told that I was put back on my old job as soon as the map of the battlefields was finished. With the exception of one slight error the Maguire map is good.

March of Custer Column

It will be recalled that Gibbon and Custer parted at the mouth of the Rosebud on June 22nd, and that the former pursued his way to the mouth of the Little Big Horn via the north bank of the Yellowstone, Tullock's Fork, and the ridge between the latter and the Big Horn, while Custer's route passed up the Rosebud, a rather insignificant stream, and then turned to the right, or west, and crossed the divide lying towards the Little Big Horn.

Immediately after the conference previously mentioned between Terry, Gibbon and Custer, the latter ordered that fifty rounds of carbine ammunition per man be carried on the pack mules, with one hundred more by each trooper on his person and in his saddle bags, together with 24 rounds of pistol ammunition.

About sunset on the 22nd, Custer told his officers that they might meet between one thousand and fifteen hundred warriors; that General Terry had offered him the squadron of the Second Cavalry, but that he had declined it because he felt sure that the Seventh Cavalry could whip any force he might

meet. He also said that he had decided not to take the Gatling guns for fear that they might hamper his movements at a critical moment "because of the inferior horses used and of the difficult nature of the country to be passed over," and added that the marches would be from 25 to 30 miles per day.



Dull Knife

This Cheyenne chief took part in the Rosebud fight against Crook on June 17, 1876, and also participated in the battle of the Little Big Horn. On November 25, 1876, in the Big Horn Mountains, he was killed and his village captured by a force under Colonel R. S. MacKenzie.

In his conversations with his officers on the marches that followed, Custer unbosomed himself and made concessions in a manner that was unusual for him. "His manner and tone usually brusque and aggressive, or somewhat curt," was conciliatory and subdued. In what he said there was "something akin to an appeal, as if depressed." An officer who was present was so impressed that he expressed the belief that he, Custer, would be killed, and

when asked why, replied, "because I have never heard him talk that way before."

Perhaps a better explanation of his conciliatory bearing may be found in a desire to enlist the enthusiastic support of all in the fight which was anticipated. In this connection, it is worthy of mention that Mitch Bouyer, the half-breed interpreter loaned to Custer by Gibbon, said to one of the officers of the Seventh Cavalry, "Well I can tell you we are going to have a damned big fight," and there is abundant evidence that the general attitude of the Indian scouts with the regiment expressed this conviction. All were impressed by the extent of the former camping grounds of the Indians along the Rosebud, while the Crow scouts were very active and efficient in the examination and interpretation of the camp grounds and trails.

The distances that are said to have been covered in Custer's advance were necessarily estimated and were perhaps rather in excess of those actually marched. At least that seems to be the general case on long and tiresome marches. It is said that on June 22nd he marched 12 miles; on the 23rd, 33, and on the 24th about 28 by sundown, when the command went into camp under cover of a bluff to remain hidden as much as possible, with orders to be ready to resume the march at 11:30 p. m. However, the officers were assembled about 9:30 p. m., and told that they would march at once; that the trail led over the "divide" to the Little Big Horn; that he (Custer) was anxious to get as near the top of the divide as possible before daylight, and place the command in concealment while he studied the country, located the Indian village and made his plans for attack on the 26th. It will be recalled that Terry said he promised Custer to have Gibbon on the Little Big Horn on the 26th.

As indicated in the preceding paragraph, the march was resumed and after advancing about 10 miles, a halt was ordered a little after 2:00 a. m. on the 25th. Sometime before eight o'clock of the same morning, Custer made known that the village had been located in the valley of the Little Big Horn, some twelve or fifteen miles beyond the top of the divide and ordered the command to march at eight. About this time he is said to have replied to a statement of an Indian scout that "we will find enough Sioux to keep us fighting two or three days," with, "I guess we will get through with them in one day." Little did he realize that the "one day" would sound "taps" for him and those who rode with him as the day declined.

On the march again at 8:00 a. m., the regiment advanced about ten miles and halted in a ravine at 10:30 a. m.

Custer had followed the enemy's trail up a branch of the Rosebud to within, say, a mile of the summit. To his right (north) lay the little divide between Tullock's Fork and the Little Big Horn, and farther on to the north and west, the divide between the former and the Big Horn, along which the

Montana column advanced.

While his troops were concealed in the ravine last mentioned, Custer went to the point on the summit from which the scouts had previously discovered smoke rising from the village and pony herds grazing in the valley of the Little Big Horn, some 12 or 15 miles away. Because of the high bluffs on the east (near) side of the river, which screened the village, it was impossible for him to discover more of the enemy and his immediate surroundings than had been reported, and no better point for observation was found until the battle was about to open.

A pack had been lost from a mule during the march of the previous night, and a sergeant who had been sent back for it, reported that he found an Indian opening one of the boxes of crackers in the pack, and that as soon as the savage saw his detachment approaching, he galloped away out of rifle range and then moved along leisurely. General Custer recounted this incident to his officers, and added that several Indians had also been seen moving along the ridge overlooking the valley through which the command had advanced, as if observing its movements; that the troops had been discovered and that he would move at once to attack the village; explaining at the same time that he had not intended to attack until the next morning, the 26th, but the discovery of the column made it imperative to act at once, as delay would allow the village to scatter and escape. He evidently was under the delusion that the Indians would try to escape. His plans for battle, such as they were, were based on this supposition, which, being erroneous, invited the disaster that followed.

Division of the Regiment

The regiment was soon enroute; crossed the summit a little before noon, and followed down the middle branch of Sun Dance Creek. Shortly after passing the summit it was divided into squadrons, as follows: the advanced squadron, consisting of three troops (A, G and M) and the Indian scouts, under Major Reno; a second squadron of three troops (D, H and K) under Captain F. W. Benteen, and a third of five (C, E, F, I and L) under the immediate control of General Custer.* The pack train was guarded by the

*The troop officers were as follows: A—Captain Myles Moylan, Lieut. Chas. C. de Rudio; B—Captain Thomas McDougal; C—Captain Tom W. Custer, Lieut. H. M. Harrington; D—Captain Thomas B. Weir, Lieut. W. S. Edgerly; E—Lieut. A. E. Smith, Lieut. J. G. Sturgis; F—Captain G. W. Yates, Lieut. W. Van W. Rely; G—Lieut. Donald McIntosh, Lieut. Geo. D. Wallace; H—Captain F. W. Benteen, Lieut. F. M. Gibson; I—Captain Myles W. Keogh, Lieut. J. E. Porter; K—Lieut. E. S. Godfrey; L—Lieut. James Calhoun (Custer's brother-in-law), Lieut. J. J. Crittenden; M—Captain Thomas H. French.

The Indian Scouts were under Lieutenants Chas. A. Varnum and Luther R. Hare. Lieut. W. W. Cooke was regimental adjutant and Lieut. B. H. Hodgson, acting adjutant of the Reno squadron. Medical officers were Doctor G. E. Lord with Custer, and Doctors J. M. DeWolf and H. R. Porter with Reno.

Civilians who were killed were "Boston" Custer (brother of the General), Arthur Reed (the General's nephew), Mark Kellogg (correspondent), Mitch Bouyer (scout), Charles Reynolds (scout), F. E. Mann, Isiah Dorman (negro interpreter from Fort Rice).

Indian scouts killed were Bloody Knife, Little Soldier, Bobtailed Bull.—EDITOR.

twelfth, or remaining, troop, (B) commanded by Captain Thomas McDougall.

Reno's squadron marched down the middle branch mentioned; Custer's column followed Reno's closely, bearing to the right and rear, while Benteen was ordered to the left and front, to a line of high bluffs about three or four miles distant, and if when he reached them he did not see the enemy, he was instructed to continue on to the next line of bluffs, and so on until he could look into the valley of the Little Big Horn.

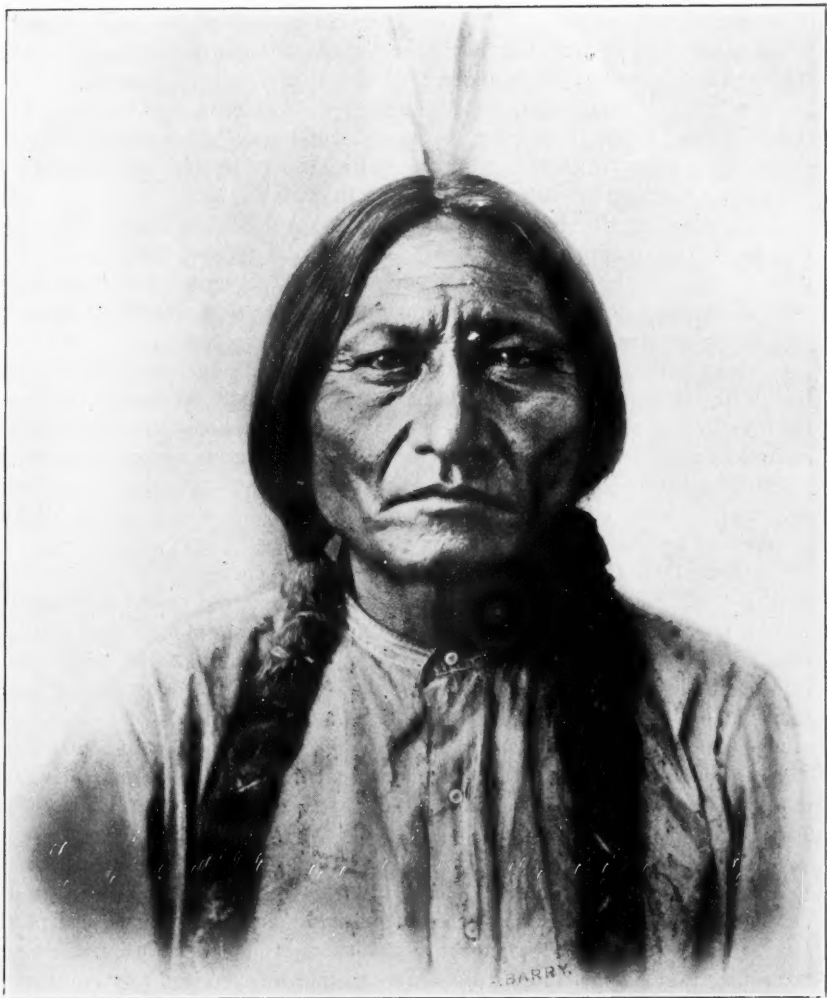
One may ask here if this wide flank movement was assigned to Benteen on the supposition that the Indian village extended along the river for miles farther than was actually the case, or was Custer uncertain as to whether it was above or below him; or was it suggested by the thought that the Sioux and his allies would stampede and try to escape towards the south, that is, towards the Big Horn Mountains, or did all these suppositions enter his mind? No one can tell, but if Benteen had carried out his orders strictly, his subsequent junction with Reno would have been materially delayed and possibly entirely prevented. As it was, Benteen found the country so broken and the corresponding tax on his horses so great, that he decided to incline to the right and pick up the trail of his comrades on that side, which he finally did, just in advance of the pack train. The reader will understand that the routes followed at this period of the advance, led to the river considerably above the Indian camp or village.

During Benteen's march to the left his men could occasionally see Custer's squadron marching at a rapid gait. After reaching the trail to his right, as stated, Benteen halted at a little stream to water, and while there heard some firing in advance, but did not ascertain its cause. He passed a tepee in which a dead warrior was found, who evidently had been dead several days. He was still several miles from the Little Big Horn.

The squadron in advance under Custer and Reno did not meet any Indians until arriving at the tepee of the dead warrior, later found by Benteen as previously stated. Here a few were seen, who withdrew as the troops advanced, making no effort to delay Custer and Reno, and keeping far enough in advance to be safe, with the purpose possibly, of inviting pursuit.

Reno was now ordered to move forward at as rapid a gait as he thought prudent, and charge the village afterwards and was told that the whole outfit would support him. He interpreted this order to mean that the balance of the regiment would act in close co-operation with him, and not at a far distant point. He was not only justified in that interpretation, but doubtless such was Custer's intention when he gave the order.

Reno, following the Indian trail, crossed the Little Big Horn, when he sent word to his commanding officer that the enemy was in his (Reno's) front, and strong. Custer had moved off to the right, being separated from Reno by a line of high bluffs and the river. It does not follow that Custer intended to so separate himself from his subordinate when he informed him that the whole



Sitting Bull

Photo by Barry

The host of the hostiles at the battle of the Little Big Horn and a powerful and influential "medicine man." While his fame is based principally upon this battle, he actually took no part in the fight, Gall, Crazy Horse, Crow King, Two Moons, and Dull Knife being the principal war chiefs. To the day of his death, Sitting Bull had for the Whites an intense and unrelenting hatred. After the Little Big Horn fight, he and Gall with a large band made their way to Canada. Sitting Bull returned and surrendered at Fort Buford in July, 1881, Gall having come in some time previously. Sitting Bull was killed by Indian Police who were attempting to arrest him December 15, 1890, on the Standing Rock Reservation, North Dakota, at the time of the Messiah excitement which culminated in the Sioux War of 1890-91. In the fight which followed the death of Sitting Bull, 43 police fought off 160 of his adherents, killing eight and wounding five. Six Indian police were killed.

outfit would support him. It is easy for a column marching rapidly over a rough country to be deflected from its selected line of direction, and knowing the terrain in question, I can understand how this may have occurred. It will be recalled that some distance back, Custer's squadron was said to have followed Reno's closely, bearing to the right and rear. This slight deviation might easily have grown into a big one in an attempt to select the easiest line of advance without following immediately in Reno's rear.

After fording the river, Reno moved at a trot down the valley. The trees that grew nearly across the bottom just above the village, from the river to near the hills to the west, as previously described, prevented him from seeing the Indian camp until he reached the point of timber that marked his farthest advance down stream as formerly stated.

About half a mile below the ford, Reno formed the column of fours into line, with the scouts on the left flank, and about a mile farther on, deployed the squadron as skirmishers. The enemy, whose numbers constantly increased, retired in good order, firing occasionally, but making no earnest attempt to check the advance of the troops. It was probably about this time that Custer was seen, by some members of Reno's command, on the bluffs waving his hat, as reported by Lieutenant Wallace to General Terry.

A little later the Indians in opposition rapidly increased in numbers, and with a brisk rifle fire they dashed mounted toward the foothills, when the Indian scouts on the left flank of the squadron ignominiously fled. In his report Reno says of this period of the action, that he saw he was being drawn into some trap and was satisfied that the enemy would fight harder as he neared the village, which was still standing. "I could not see Custer or any other support, and at the same time the very earth seemed to grow Indians. They were running towards me in swarms and from all directions." He adds that he saw that he must defend himself, "and give up the attack mounted. This I did."

When the hostiles moved around the left flank of the squadron and the Ree scouts fled, Reno's left fell back until the command found itself on the defensive in the timber, dismounted behind the bank of a former bed of the river. While from Reno's report it might be inferred that he ordered his men to assume this new attitude, I did not learn that he exercised any influence in bringing the change about, unless, indeed, through lack of aggressive and controlling leadership, he allowed his troops to slip from the offensive to the defensive. Thus far he had none killed, and only one man wounded.*

*Reno gave up the attack without the loss of a single man, except one wounded. I doubt if Reno had ever before seen a hostile Indian; he certainly had not been in any campaign with the Seventh Cavalry. Scout Herendeen, McClelland's old friend, in a letter dated January 4, 1878, and published in the *New York Herald*, January 22, stated: "The number of Indians that attacked Reno's command on the flat on the 25th of June could not have exceeded two hundred warriors." This reminds me of the story of Lieut. S. M. Robbins, commanding Troop D, Seventh Cavalry, detailed as escort of a wagon train going to Fort Wallace for supplies. Not feeling well, he was riding in an ambulance. The

The timbered area was too large for a force as small as a squadron of three small troops to hold indefinitely, but it was a strong position and one in which Reno might have maintained himself for a considerable period, possibly several hours. How long he actually remained there is uncertain. Some said a few minutes, while others thought about an hour. The hostiles had him nearly surrounded, but nevertheless while he remained in the woods his casualties were few. George Herendeen, the scout, who was with him, told me that Reno's nervousness was evident and that it excited and stampeded his men. His incapacity to command was commencing to manifest itself. A man was killed close to him and he decided to leave the timber and get to the bluffs. He (Herendeen) said Reno gave the order to mount and that before the troopers were fairly in their saddles he countermanded that order and directed them to dismount, and again commanded "mount" about the time they were reaching the ground; that his excitability imposed itself on the men, and that the retreat that started in column, quickly degenerated into a mad race for the bluffs, in which, it seems, Reno led.

The Indians were encouraged when the fire slackened as the men started to mount, and doubtless the movement was visible between the trees to some of them, who then commenced to close in and fight more actively. Again Reno's orders were not heard by all of the members of the squadron; many did not start to mount until they saw other comrades departing, making it necessary for them to hurry to catch up and this only added to the confusion. At it was, a small number remained concealed in the woods until the Indians left and then came out, while four actually remained there until the night of the 26-27th.

The enemy pushed close up to the column as Reno tried to regain the bluffs east of the river, and thus cut off the possibility of retreat to the ford where he had entered the valley. In fact the dead men and horses lying along the line of retreat as we passed with Wallace and Hare, showed plainly that the flying troopers just skirted the timber. This may or may not have been Reno's intention. I am forced to the opinion that he did not give the matter much thought, but was controlled by a wild desire to reach the hills in order to get away if possible, from the foe. He made a dash for a pony trail leading

train was attacked by Indians. The driver yelled "Indians! Indians!!" Robbins got out of the ambulance, surveyed the situation and said: "Huh! Must be two or three hundred of them." The driver leaped from his seat and cried out, "Two or three hundred! My God, if there's one there's a million of 'em!"

The point is to compare Herendeen's statistics with those of some other writers of later times. Herendeen had been with the "Bozeman Gold Hunting Expedition" a year or two previous which was pursued and repeatedly attacked by the Sioux until the expedition was compelled to abandon the country, the same region where the military operations in 1876 took place. Reno's strength, as near as I can make out from the muster rolls of Troops A, G and M, was about 140. All men of Troops A and M had nine months or more of service, having had no recruits since October, 1875. G Troop received twenty recruits in April, and had twenty absentees at the supply camp.—E. S. GODFREY.

up a narrow ravine in his front to the top of the bluffs. On reaching the stream he plunged in, crossed, and hastened up the ravine to the top.

It was fortunate indeed that he happened to find such a ravine in his front, for the bluffs generally were too precipitous to be climbed under the fire of the rapidly pursuing enemy. As it was, it must be considered remarkable that the majority of the command escaped, for while the little river offered but slight difficulty to crossing almost anywhere, the squadron by the time it was reached, had lost all semblance of organization. There does not appear to have been any organized resistance during this disorderly retreat, although it is understood that a man here and there fired at the pursuers. In truth little could have been expected with such a leader. It was said that as Reno emptied his revolvers, he threw them away. A fine example to set to his men!

Death of Lieutenants McIntosh and Hodgson

Lieutenant Donald McIntosh was killed close to the edge of the woods, and his horribly mutilated body was identified as we passed. Dr. J. M. De Wolf fell while climbing the bluffs a short distance from the command. My classmate at West Point, Lieutenant B. H. Hodgson was wounded in the leg as his horse leaped into the ford and fell dead. Hodgson grasped the stirrup of a passing comrade and was pulled across the stream, only to be shot dead on reaching the farther bank.

Reno's casualties were now three officers, including Dr. De Wolf, and twenty-nine enlisted men and scouts killed; seven enlisted men wounded, and one officer, one interpreter and fourteen soldiers and scouts missing. Nearly all of the casualties occurred during the race for the hills. The Crow scouts remained with the command, but the Rees continued their flight to the Powder River supply camp.

As Reno's disorganized units regained the bluffs they had a breathing spell, for about this time the foe began to withdraw to meet, as it was later learned, Custer's onslaught. It may be too much to say that Custer prevented the annihilation of Reno's command at this period, but certainly his blow fell none too soon to prevent further disorganization and probably additional heavy losses. Had Reno shown a bolder spirit in the timber and greater confidence in his leader, he might at this moment from that position have changed the fortunes of the day; at least he might have saved Custer's command from annihilation without incurring his own. He left the woods at the worst possible time, both for himself and Custer. Even though the latter had not moved to his immediate support, he should have known that his Chief would strike soon. It was not in the nature of the man to turn his back to the foe, and a diversion on any part of the field would have contributed to his lieutenant's relief.

A short advance through the woods from the old bed of the river, would have enabled Reno to fully see the village into which a withering fire might have been poured while many of its defenders were confronting Custer, and

with a most demoralizing effect.

In point of time our narrative should now turn to Custer's fight to the death, but as lack of leadership on the part of his principal subordinate undoubtedly accounts in a large measure for his utter destruction, we will best understand what befell those whose bodies Gibbon found lying on the bleak hills, by continuing the story of the squadrons he (Custer) detached under others.

We have followed Reno to the top of the bluffs, and will leave him for a moment while his officers and men are busy bringing order out of chaos, with little or no assistance from their squadron commander, and turn to Benteen and his squadron. They had not yet appeared, nor had McDougall's troop with the packs.

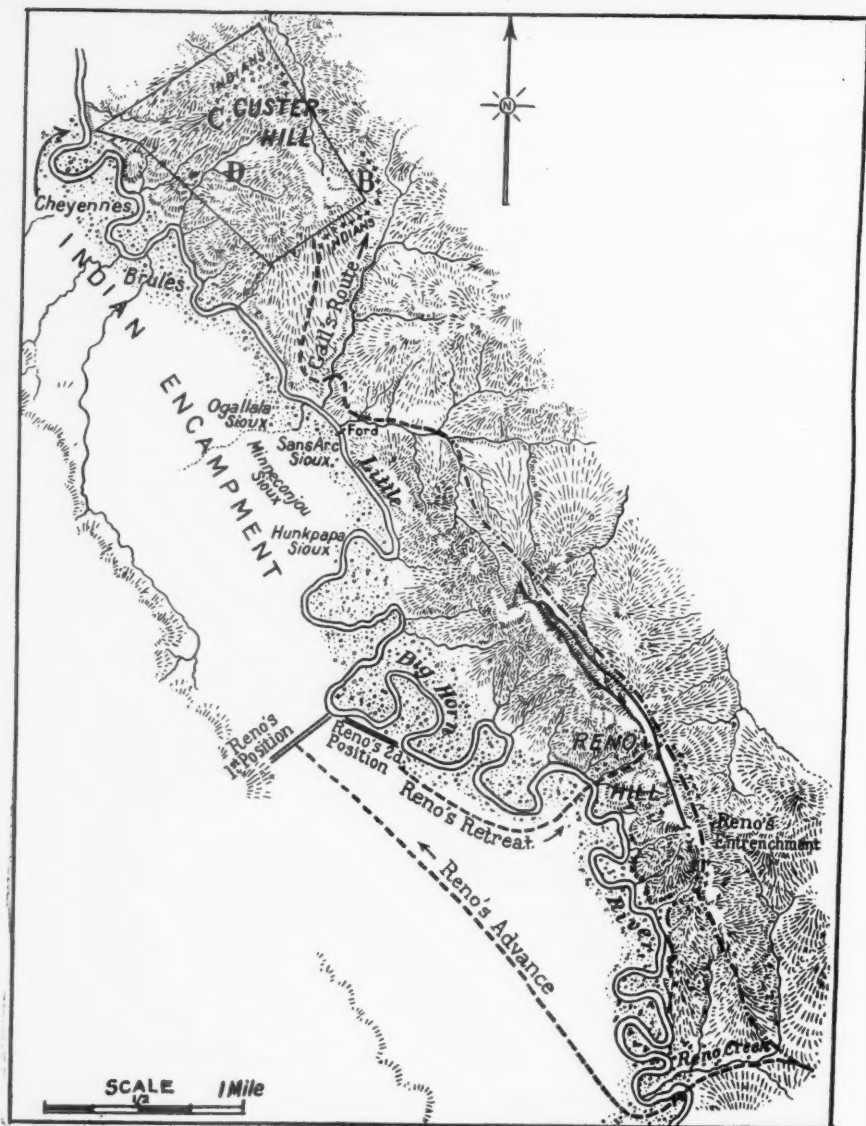
Benteen's Movements

Not long after leaving the place where he gave his horses a drink, previously mentioned, Benteen met a sergeant bearing a message from Custer to the officer in charge of the pack train, directing him to hurry. Whether or not this incident prevented Benteen from following Reno's trail into the valley, the writer cannot say, but at all events he continued his march on the bluffs and was soon met by a trumpeter with an order signed by the Adjutant, Lieutenant W. W. Cooke, reading "Benteen, come on. Big village. Be quick. Bring packs," with a postscript saying to "bring packs."* The repetition of the instructions to bring the packs shows some not unnatural excitement on the part of the writer of the dispatch, and possibly on Custer's part, some emphasis about the probable need of the reserve ammunition on the pack mules. No information was given to Benteen about Reno's earlier report that he had everything in front of him, and that the enemy was strong. Custer had evidently given up the intention, if he ever had it, of giving immediate support to Reno and doubtless thought that all needed support would be afforded if the village be vigorously attacked at another point.

It is thought Custer should now have informed Reno that neither he, Benteen or McDougall, would give him the close support that he had a right to expect from the order previously cited, i. e. to move forward at as rapid a gait as he thought prudent, and charge the village afterward, and the whole outfit would support him. Possibly he reasoned that his (Custer's) contemplated early attack would answer every purpose, but if Reno had been told to expect no relief from the rear, that it would come elsewhere, he might have remained in the bottom longer, waiting for the attack that did a little later draw the foe from his front as he gained the bluffs.

The messenger to Benteen volunteered the erroneous information that the Indians had abandoned the village and "skedaddled." How he gained this idea I cannot say, but it probably reflected Custer's earlier optimism.

*Both Sergeant Knipe and Trumpeter Martin met Benteen a couple of miles before reaching the place where Custer diverged to the right.—E. S. GODFREY.



Reproduced by permission from a map loaned by Robert Bruce, New York

The point where Custer was last seen by members of Reno's command is indicated by A. This was also the farthest north reached by Reno's command, when it advanced from its first position on the bluffs, which was between words "Reno" and "Hill." The broken line leading along the bluff's from Reno Creek is Custer's route as traced by some authorities. General Godfrey believes that it was much farther away from the river. At B is where the troops of Keogh and Calhoun were dismounted to fight on foot. Near C were found the remains of some of the members of the troops of Captain Yates and Tom Custer, most of whom were killed on Custer Hill above. At D in the ravine, were found the remains of many of the men of Lieut. A. E. Smith's troop.

When met by the trumpeter, Benteen had been marching at a trot and walk, according as the ground was smooth or broken. If he had been informed promptly of the earlier order to Reno to charge the village and of that officer's report that he had everything in front of him and that the enemy was strong, he might have been able at times to hurry his march. He certainly would have been keenly alert for the sound of battle.*

In describing this period of the day, Godfrey says, "We now heard firing, first straggling shots, and as we advanced the engagement became more and more pronounced and appeared to be coming towards us," and adds, "the column took the gallop with pistols drawn to meet the enemy whom we thought Custer was driving before him, never suspecting that our forces had been defeated." As the two messengers from Custer had met Benteen we may infer that the latter was either on, or comparatively near to the route followed by the regimental commander, and that he (Benteen) had no thought that Reno was rushing into action, if not already engaged. Custer seems to have been singularly negligent in linking up his separate squadrons; in establishing team work. He apparently utterly underestimated the numbers, courage and mental abilities of his opponents, than whom no finer mounted infantry existed.

When the members of Benteen's squadron were able to look down into the valley of the Little Big Horn, they saw horsemen dashing about in clouds of dust. There was also smoke from the burning grass which the Indians had fired, possibly to help drive out the soldiers as well as to cover their own movements, and this by restricting vision, added to the confusion that began to envelop the members of Benteen's command. They saw a body of troops engaged on the bluffs to their right, but an engagement appeared to be going on in the valley too, although because of the distance, smoke and dust they

*It was the "sound of battle" that gave Captain Weir such concern that he urged Benteen to move out; Benteen, not heeding this urge, Weir came to me and asked me to go with him to urge Benteen to move. I told him I was only a lieutenant and probably would be told to mind my own business. Weir returned to his troop, paced nervously back and forth for awhile, then came to me and said, "well, I am going, anyway," mounted his troop and moved off, and a little later Benteen gave the order to mount and followed Weir, and from then Weir had the lead and set the gaits until we came to Reno's command on the bluff. I assume that the firing we heard at the watering place came with Reno's first contact, and the lull that followed was when he fell back to the timbered old river bed. It was after we crossed Reno Creek that we glimpsed the melee, or confused rapid riding of horsemen, but owing to smoke and dust, could not distinguish friend or foe. It was soon after this that I saw Half-Yellow-Face, Crow scout, with a few loose ponies, coming from the bluffs. I rode up to him and said: "Soldiers," and pointed to the valley and then to the bluffs. He faced to his right rear, pointed to the bluffs, and said: "Soldiers!" This information I communicated to Benteen. We ascended the bluffs and met Reno at the top. The firing had almost ceased. Soon after we halted we discovered some Indians sneaking up ravines dismounted. We opened fire and they disappeared, and all firing ceased. All units crossed "Sun Dance" or Reno Creek at the same ford; Custer diverged to the right soon after crossing.—E. S. GODFREY.

could not positively locate friends there. Godfrey says, "there was a short time of uncertainty" about the proper direction to take until several Crow scouts, who were driving a herd of ponies before them, came by and one of them motioned to the right and said "soldiers." Acting on this information they joined Reno's squadron, which was still firing. Reno having lost his hat, had a handkerchief tied around his head, and was plainly excited. Benteen's men formed a dismounted skirmish line on the edge of the bluffs, overlooking the valley. The Indians soon withdrew from the attack, and Reno stood still.



Courtesy of Mr. Robert Bruce
Captain Frederick W. Benteen

At the end of the Civil War, Captain Benteen was mustered out as a colonel of volunteers and was then appointed a captain of cavalry, which grade he held until 1882, when he was promoted to the grade of major.

Benteen was too good a soldier not to have informed Reno that but a short time before joining him he had received an order from Custer to come on and "be quick, bring packs." Reno himself had been ordered to charge the village, but he had not done so. Custer's instructions to his lieutenants indicated that he contemplated positive and aggressive action. So far as they were concerned he did not get it. No one who knew him could have doubted that he intended to push the fighting. Such was his nature. Not having supported his Chief in the valley, every rule of warfare dictated that

Reno should strike hard when he gained the top of the bluffs. He now had half of the regiment with him, and McDougall's troop coming on; in all seven troops against Custer's five. His own squadron was, it is true, badly shaken, but neither Benteen nor McDougall had been engaged. Reno stood still. His energy at the time went no further than to make a futile attempt to recover the body of Lieutenant Hodgson at the ford, and to fill a few canteens with water. Some of his officers looking down from the edge of the bluff at the large number of mounted warriors in the bottom below, observed that the enemy suddenly started down the valley, and that in a few minutes scarcely a horseman was left in sight. Reno's front was practically cleared of the enemy.

Among the officers on the bluff the question of "what's the matter with Custer, that he does not send word as to what we shall do?" was being asked. If Custer could have heard and replied we may imagine his saying, "I was counting on aggressive and helpful action from Reno, and but a short time ago Benteen was ordered to come on, to be quick, and to bring the packs. The extra ammunition as you know, is on the packs. You hear heavy firing in the direction in which I disappeared. You must know I am fighting. You know it is my rule to act quickly and vigorously in battle. You are my subordinates. Why do you not observe the spirit of my instructions and act?"

It is not sufficient to say that there was no serious doubt about Custer's being able to take care of himself. He had gone down stream with five troops; heavy firing was heard in that direction; it was evident that a fight was on, for neither Custer nor the Indians could be wasting ammunition by shooting at a mark, and yet Reno with six troops and another approaching, stood still, thus ignoring the well known military axiom to march to the sound of the guns.

Benteen's squadron was directed to divide its ammunition with Reno's. In view of the little firing Reno had done, this may not have been necessary, but the thought at least, should have impressed that officer with the significance of Custer's last order, to bring the packs and be quick. Was it not possible that Custer might need additional ammunition? Heavy firing was heard down the river, if not when the distribution of ammunition was made, at least soon after.

After Benteen had joined Reno, firing was heard for a long time in the direction Custer had gone. Godfrey says, "we were satisfied that Custer was fighting the Indians somewhere," and he adds, "we heard two distinct volleys which excited some surprise," and continuing, he says, "I have but little doubt now that these volleys were fired by Custer's orders as a sign of distress and to indicate where he was." Whether or not the volleys were construed by Reno as signals of distress, they did tell him that his Chief with fewer organizations than he had, was engaged in battle, and this at a time when the enemy had practically withdrawn from in front of his own position.

Captain Thomas B. Weir and his Lieutenant, W. S. Edgerly, after driving

away the comparatively few Indians in their front, became impatient at the delay, and the former started to get permission to move in the direction of the firing. The troop had in fact commenced the advance, when Weir observing a large number of the enemy move toward it, halted the movement, but he and Edgerly remained in the advanced position for a considerable period without serious molestation. The incident is only of importance here because it shows that some of Reno's officers appreciated the situation at its true value, and their duty to Custer. Weir saw the savages riding and firing over the field where later the Montana column found Custer and his dead.

McDougall now came up with his troop and the pack train, and reported the firing he had heard in the direction Custer had taken. There is fair reason to believe that this was near 4:20 p. m., and about the same time Scout George Herendeen and thirteen men, who had been unable to accompany Reno in his flight from the valley, rejoined the command. Several were wounded. As they were leaving the timber they repulsed an attack made by five Indians who fired upon them, but the mere fact that they were able to leave their cover, ford the river, and ascend the bluffs (dismounted for they had lost their horses) is quite good evidence that there was no serious opposition confronting Reno.*

It is Godfrey's recollection that Benteen joined Reno about half past two, and that it was about 5:00 p. m. when the latter finally decided to advance to the support of his Chief. Thus two and a half precious hours had been dawdled away, when time was the essence of the situation.

It may not be amiss here to go back a little and say that when Reno first entered the valley, there were immense herds of ponies grazing on the hills to the west. Little has been said in the printed accounts of the fight about these herds, but when we reached our lately besieged friends, I was much impressed by the various statements concerning them. It was said that as Reno's squadron moved down the valley from the ford where it first crossed, the Indians commenced driving the loose ponies down stream. This seems logical. I was told that the rapidly moving herds raised a great cloud of dust, and it occurred to me then that Custer doubtless saw from the high bluffs to the east of the river, this dust and fleeing ponies, and was further confirmed in his opinion that the Indians would not stand for a stiff fight. Is it possible that this sight caused Custer to be less cautious than he would otherwise have been in widely separating his own and Reno's squadrons, and may it in part explain his apparent indifference toward notifying his lieutenant that his support would be given, not in his immediate vicinity, but at considerable distance, out of sight, near the middle of the village and on the opposite side of the river?

*Reno had advanced not more than a half mile we saw the dismounted men crossing the valley. Reno halted the command and waited for them to rejoin. These men ascended the bluffs nearly a mile below us; then considerable time was consumed in mounting them.—E. S. GODFREY.

Reno advanced to a high point, from which he could see, through the dust-laden air, stationary groups of horsemen and also single horsemen moving about. These horsemen were in the direction from which the firing had been heard and where later Bradley found Custer's dead. The manner of grouping and the way in which the riders sat on their horses showed that they were Indians. Occasional shots were heard, some at a great distance. The observers concluded that Custer had been defeated, and that the distant shots were fired by his rear guard as he was driven from the field.

The firing last mentioned ceased, and Reno was now to pay dearly for not joining his Chief while the latter was fighting, for through clouds of dust the Indians converged toward the hesitating commander and once more, due entirely to his own inactivity, he was to fight without Custer's support. This piecemeal fighting fitted admirably into the plans of the savages—to first protect their families in the village, and then to overwhelm in succession the detachments of their enemy.

Reno now dismounted his command to fight on foot, but made no determined effort to oppose the foe before commencing to fall back. Again his order for withdrawal was not communicated to his entire command, for Godfrey says that while he was busy posting his men and giving directions about the use of ammunition, he "was a little startled by the remark that the command was out of sight," and apparently all the other troops except Weir's and French's had disappeared and the Indians were attacking them. Godfrey now received an order to rejoin the main command. I do not know whether Weir and French were similarly ordered, but after retiring some distance, Godfrey looked back and saw their troops coming back in hot haste, with Edgerly near the top of the bluff trying with difficulty to mount his excited horse, driven frantic by seeing the other horses rushing away.

The Indians opened fire from the top of the hill on the retreating troops, killing one man and wounding others, and then started in pursuit.

Besieged

The hasty withdrawal and close pursuit, if it had been unchecked, might have brought disaster to the entire command, but fortunately Godfrey properly appraised the situation, and dismounting his one troop, of Reno's seven, he opened fire, compelling the enemy to halt and take cover. He received a second order to rejoin, and slowly retreated, firing as he fell back. The enemy's fire was increasing and soon Indians began to appear from cover. Godfrey's men began to "bunch," slacken their fire and move faster; and to prevent their getting out of hand, he ordered a halt, required "intervals" to be re-taken, and the fire to be delivered with greater calmness. After once more forcing the Indians to take cover, he renewed the retreat and finally reached the main lines, the establishment of which must have been aided materially by his taking upon himself the checking of the pursuit.

Reno was now to have a taste of what his indecision or worse, had forced

upon the smaller detachment under his Chief, for the Indians soon surrounded him and by 7:00 o'clock he was fighting for his life. The enemy continued his fire until nearly dark, possibly to near half past eight or nine o'clock, for the days in Montana in June are long. "Everyone was wondering about Custer, the general opinion seemed to prevail that he had been defeated and driven down the river, where he would probably join General Terry and with whom he would return to our relief." The remaining members of the Seventh Cavalry evidently retained their faith in Custer's inherent aggressiveness, and the opinion expressed was also possibly an indirect compliment to Terry, for it assumed a disposition on his part to act, and not to imitate Reno in his hesitation to move to the relief of his regimental commander.

While darkness, with its accompanying cessation of the enemy's rifle fire, brought relief to our hard pressed friends, yet the Indians rendered the night hideous with the noise of their "tom-toms" and demoniacal yells.

Soon after darkness settled down an attempt was made to learn something of the five missing troops, but the scouts sent out for this purpose returned after a short absence and reported the surrounding country full of Sioux. Great confusion prevailed, and the wish being father to the thought, many imagined they could see or hear, relief columns approaching. It was even suggested that Crook was at hand. Stable and other familiar calls were sounded as signals for the supposed re-enforcements. As no relief came, the command went seriously to work to dig in. As only three or four shovels and spades were at hand, anything that would loosen dirt, such as hatchets, knives, tin cups, forks, etc., were used to construct rifle pits. This intrenching was still in progress when the enemy opened fire at early dawn on the 26th, probably soon after 3 o'clock. As dawn advanced to daylight, the firing became continuous on the part of both friend and foe. The horses and mules, more exposed than the men in their rifle pits, suffered severely.

The rear of Benteen's troop was exposed to long range fire from the hills to the north, and as the situation on his front was critical he went to Reno and asked for re-enforcements. The latter, running true to form, hesitated and delayed in his decision, but finally ordered Captain Thomas H. French with a troop to the other side. A little later Benteen charged and drove the Indians on his front nearly to the river.

A Counter Attack

The firing slackened for a time, but later recommenced with greater intensity. Benteen again went to Reno and said if something was not done the Indians would run into the lines, but as this statement failed to arouse his Chief, he added, "This won't do, you must drive them back." Thus urged, Reno directed that preparations be made for a charge, and told Benteen to give the word. This the latter did with vigor, and four troops went forward with a hurrah. The opposing Indians broke as soon as the charging line started. Benteen's attitude revived temporarily the old aggressiveness of his

subordinate officers and men, but when they had advanced about one hundred yards, Reno called out "get back men, back," and back they came.

As the day advanced and the heat of the sun increased, the thirst of the members of the command became maddening, for although a clear and sparkling river was near by, it could not be reached.

About 11:00 A. M. the enemy's fire slackened again, and parties were organized to get water. Several soldiers were wounded by shots from the nearby woods in the valley, but sufficient water was procured to meet the immediate needs of the members of the command. By one o'clock, the Indians, with the exception of some warriors apparently detached to guard the river, left Reno's immediate front, but at about two o'clock they came back and drove the besieged to their trenches. At 3:00 P. M. the firing ceased and was not renewed.

It is significant that the hour 11:00 A. M., when the enemy's fire slackened after their vigorous attack of the morning, is the same as that when the infantry of the Montana column joined its cavalry on the ridge overlooking the Little Big Horn and its valley. The united column was in plain view to any observer in the valley below the battle ground or through glasses from the bluffs near the village. Again the hour stated—about 2:00 o'clock—when they came back and drove Reno's men to their trenches, is but little later than when Terry halted for the long mid-day rest. Any Indian observing Terry's column would naturally delay a short time in order to determine what the halt meant; whether it was for a temporary rest, or to make camp, before riding off to report upon the subject.

Terry halted at about 1:00 P. M. The Indians renewed their attack for a short time at about 2:00 P. M. The difference in time between observing the halt, if it were observed, and the attack, may be explained by the possible difference in watches; by the fact that the time of the attack is not placed at 2:00 o'clock, but *about* that hour, and by the time it took the observer to report, if he did report. It does not seem reasonable to assume or believe, that the Indians were ignorant of Terry's advance after he appeared on the ridge overlooking the valley. To believe that they were, is to ascribe to the Sioux and their allies the most careless and indifferent observation imaginable. Such carelessness and disregard of the first principles of security and information were contrary to their nature and habitual practice. It is interesting to ask if Terry's halt encouraged the Indians in lessening their haste in getting away and in temporarily renewing their attack, thus giving their squaws more time for packing their tepees and property, or if other reasons dictated their action. The reader may judge for himself if the sight of Terry's column or Reno's defense when his men were driven to their trenches, about 2:00 P. M., caused the Indians to definitely discontinue their fire about 3:00 P. M., and prepare for the retreat that will be mentioned below.

Late in the afternoon our weary comrades on Reno Hill saw in the valley, a few horsemen who were apparently left in observation. The grass was set

on fire about 7:00 p. m., and through the smoke screen our friends saw an immense moving mass crossing the plateau, going toward the Big Horn Mountains. It was estimated that the moving mass was five or six miles away. Undoubtedly the "mass" mentioned was the retiring enemy seen by the Montana column at about the same hour, and at about the same or perhaps at a little less, distance, and reported by Muggins Taylor later as being Custer's command. Terry was now not much farther from Reno than from the "moving mass," for that night he bivouacked eight and three-quarters miles from the foot of the hill occupied by that officer, measured along our line of march followed the next day, but probably not more than six and three-quarter miles in an air line.

No effort, so far as known, was made during the night to inform the Department Commander of the situation, although it was surmised that Custer might have met Terry and that both were moving to the relief of the larger fraction of the former's regiment. It was during this night of June 26-27 that Lieutenant Charles C. De Rudio, Sergeant Thomas O'Neil, F. F. Girard, an interpreter, and a half breed scout named William Jackson, who had been left in the bottom when Reno made his dash for the hills on the 25th, and who in the meantime had concealed themselves in the brush, ascended the bluffs and entered Reno's lines. It would seem that their ability to do this would have suggested to Reno his plain duty to make strenuous efforts to communicate with Terry, supposed to be near with a command considerably smaller than the one Custer originally had, and inform him how roughly the larger detachment had been driven from the field, and the urgent necessity for him (Terry) to be on his guard. It would seem that even a proper regard for the interests of his own command would have dictated the propriety of such an earnest attempt, and his failure to do so can only be explained on the supposition that terror, aided by physical exhaustion, had paralyzed his faculties.

Reno as a Commander

The writer does not feel called upon to discuss the question of Reno's personal courage, but only to weigh his qualifications for an independent command. It is not unlikely that under the immediate supervision of Custer he would have performed his duties as a subordinate in a way that would not have invited comment, but the courage to follow is one thing, and that to lead, something very different. The first may dispense with all idea of responsibility for the movement about to be attempted, while the latter must assume it, and also demands a courage of convictions that is not to be shaken by the thought of the lives about to be sacrificed, or by the suggestions, always ready, of associates, that it might be well to delay, to side step as we say. It was in leadership that Custer's lieutenant seems to have failed, and that he had so failed and that Benteen was the man who stood between utter destruction and such safety as was found, was heard on all sides from his subordinates when



A Quartette of Indian Chiefs

Above—left, Gall; right, Two Moons. Below—left, Short Bull; right, Kicking Bear. Gall, Hunkpapa Sioux chief, took the most prominent part in the destruction of Custer's command, and is usually given credit for the Indian victory. Two Moons was head chief of the Northern Cheyennes, and participated in both the Rosebud fight and that of the Little Big Horn. He, with his band, surrendered to General Nelson A. Miles at Fort Keogh, Montana, April 22, 1877. Short Bull and Kicking Bear were at the Little Big Horn, but were not particularly noted at that time. They became so later by reason of their connection with the threatened uprising of 1890-91. Kicking Bear, a Minneconjou Sioux, initiated Sitting Bull into the mysteries of the Messianic Cult. As a result of his activity in this movement, Sitting Bull was killed while resisting arrest.

Terry arrived. Many of the criticisms heard were severe. Later, before the Court of Inquiry which followed, many were toned down.

Custer's Movements

We may now turn to the lost five troops found by Gibbon's chief of scouts on the morning of the 27th, and follow their movements as best we may from the mute evidence derived from the groupings of the dead bodies where they fell on the hillsides, and from the meager statements as I recall them, of their comrades with Reno, made on the morning of the 27th, and from statements written since by them and others.

It will be recalled that the Seventh Cavalry crossed the dividing ridge between the Rosebud and Little Big Horn rivers a little before noon on the 25th, and that shortly before this, Custer told his officers that the Indians had discovered their presence, and that although he had not intended to attack until the next morning, the 26th, the day Terry had promised to be on the Little Big Horn, their discovery made immediate action imperative. In the division of the regiment that was made soon after crossing the summit, Custer took five troops, Reno three, and Benteen three. McDougall took one, together presumably with the troopers detailed as packers and in addition a detachment of one non-commissioned officer and six men from each troop—that is, 84 men from the 12 troops. Recall that Benteen's squadron was ordered to the left, either apparently because Custer thought the village extended farther to his left than was the case, or on the supposition that the Indians would run up the valley and Benteen would be in position to head them off. Reno went in toward the burning tepee and the river while Custer with his squadron followed Reno closely, at the same time bearing to the right. Reno was told to attack and that the whole outfit would support him.

As previously stated, these instructions probably contemplated close support, and Reno so interpreted them. But, either because Custer thought it desirable to gain some distance to the right in order to intercept the enemy if, instead of trying to escape up stream he should run down the valley from Reno's assault, or because the nature of the terrain threw him farther to the right than he contemplated, the fact remains that his squadron became widely separated from the balance of the regiment, and he lost control over the greater portion of his command. If we accept the theory that he bore to the right with a view to intercepting the flight of the Indians down the valley, it is by no means necessary to conclude that he imagined such a wide interval would become necessary, for he probably did not foresee that the steepness of the bluffs below the point in the river towards which Reno was headed would be such as to prevent his (Custer) descending to the valley at a point comparatively nearby. However, his squadron bore off to the right and was lost to view, although he, with a companion or two, were seen by members of Reno's command later on the bluffs overlooking the valley. His actions and waving of his hat, seem to imply that he was encouraging to vigorous action.

Possibly, as previously stated, Custer was misled by seeing the vast pony herd being driven down stream along the plateau across the river and being thus further encouraged in the belief that the Indians would not stand to meet his attacks, was less cautious than he might otherwise have been. At all events, his command continued the down stream advance at a considerable distance back from the river.

The Fight on Custer Hill

When the battlefield was carefully gone over and studied by Gibbon's command and the remnants of the Seventh Cavalry, I cannot recall that there was any dissenting opinion about Custer's having descended from the bluffs by following down a large coulee that led to the river not far from the center of the village. If he entertained any intention to strike at the hostiles or their camp, when he reached this coulee it certainly invited him to descend, for it offered the first good opportunity for his command to reach the valley after it commenced to bear to the right from Reno's column. He did not reach the river but that he did enter the coulee and turn toward the river was shown by the positions of the dead, so that there is apparently only to decide whether or not the positions of the bodies marked the farthest advance toward the Little Big Horn.

Godfrey holds, after careful talks in after years with some of his previous enemies, that Custer was never nearer the river than the position on the ridge on which he was found, and I doubt if he was any nearer than where the extreme right of his small line rested, but I am still of the opinion that he was farther down the coulee than where we found the remains of Calhoun's and Keogh's troops. The trails I saw and the dispositions indicated by the positions of the dead men and horses, incline me to the belief that he went farther down this coulee with the intention of crossing, but was deterred therefrom by the Indians as they commenced to arrive in great numbers after having temporarily disposed of Reno. He then decided that he must withdraw slightly and take the best attainable position on the higher hills to his rear. The pressure of the arriving Indians on his left flank, as he moved toward the river—that is, up stream—nearest Reno's position—and who naturally arrived first, forced his now retiring column to his new left—that is, down stream—from the coulee marked as "Gall's Approach" on Godfrey's map, and he first halted and dismounted Calhoun's troop to hold them in check until he could place the balance of his command. This is apparent from the fact that nearly all the men and horses of this troop were killed here.

Apparently Calhoun's troop was not equal to the task imposed upon it, and he added Keogh's a little farther on. I am of the opinion that an appreciable interval of time must have elapsed between the order for Calhoun to fight on foot and the similar order given Keogh, for if they had been dismounted by the same command, then the dead led horses of the two troops would have been found closer together.

In his withdrawal, Custer moved his command between Calhoun's position and "Custer Hill"—that is, the knoll on which he died—and dismounting on it, deployed the major part of what remained of his command, as dismounted skirmishers along the ridge running from the said knoll toward the river, and most of the men turned their horses loose. Those near Custer killed theirs in a circle about 30 feet in diameter, which was not badly formed. Possibly at the same time, some of Smith's troop on the higher ground extended toward Keogh's position. These skirmishers towards the river were evidently told to turn their horses loose as no dead animals were lying along this line, although there were dead horses on their left toward Custer Hill.

Evidently Custer, who, facing death had found himself and was thinking clearly and acting quickly, had decided that here they must fight to the death, or until Reno or Benteen brought relief. The position taken was the best obtainable. The line he established on the ridge mentioned, running from this position toward the river showed more care taken in deploying and placing the men than, in my opinion, was shown on any other part of the entire field, including of course, Reno's several positions.

The intervals between the dead skirmishers were remarkably regular—so regular that the deployment of the line must have had the close supervision of some officer. My recollection is that the body of no officer was found on this line, which I do not understand. It is possible that officers were originally with the men there, but were among the last to survive, and in the end joined Custer and others on the knoll. At the lower end of the line—toward the river—in a deep coulee, slightly to the front and right of the line of skirmishers, a number of bodies, twenty-eight I believe, were found. They belonged to Smith's and other troops originally placed farther to the left. I am of the opinion that these men were at one time at the right of the skirmish line, having been sent there as they drifted to Custer's knoll from Smith's and other troops to the left, and when the end was approaching, as they were farthest from Custer, or the living controlling force on the knoll, they broke from the skirmish line in the hope of escaping observation in the deep coulee.

Calhoun's troop practically, if not entirely, died where placed on the left of the line. Keogh himself was found about midway between Calhoun's position and Custer's, and considerably nearer Custer Hill than where the troop dismounted. This does not necessarily imply that the troop broke and stampeded to Custer. I am inclined to think that when the latter had established himself, he ordered Keogh and what was left of his troop to come here, and it is not unlikely that he shifted the remnants of Smith's troop at the same time.

A dead horse about 100 or 150 feet, more or less, from Custer Hill in the direction of Keogh's and Calhoun's positions, was pointed out to me as the animal ridden by Custer. The animal fell with his head towards the knoll, and from the position of his legs I judge that he was traveling rapidly when he fell. If it was Custer's horse, which I have no reason to doubt, Custer was

evidently making for the knoll when his mount was shot, and it occurred to me at the time that the loss of his horse might have determined Custer to stand on the said knoll and mentioned ridge when he gained them, instead of trying to gain the still higher hills farther toward the divide. I do not say that such was the case, for it is probable that the pressure of the Indians was already too great to permit of a retreat much longer prolonged, or further delay in establishing a firing line, especially to a man of Custer's aggressive temperament, whose custom had always been to throw himself upon his foe



A Mule Litter

Litters of this kind were improvised after the battle of the Little Big Horn when it was ascertained that the transportation of the wounded to the *Far West* by hand litter was impracticable.

like a hound on a rabbit. The thought at least suggests itself. He was dismounted, and doubtless many of his men also; the enemy was pressing, and here was a position on which they could stand and strike back, probably without hope of victory, but at least with the possibility of holding on until Reno or Benteen came, or of dying like brave men.

Around Custer, thirty or forty men fell, some of whom evidently had used their dead horses as a breastwork. Several officers were lying near him. On this part of the field the mutilation of the dead was comparatively slight.

I think no thoughtful and unprejudiced man could have examined the last

positions held by Custer as marked by the dead, without being convinced that he was thinking clearly, fast and courageously. I said to myself, as did others doubtless, "here a hero died." That his was the spirit of battle seemed clear from those who choose to die on the knoll with him. Undoubtedly other brave men died on the knoll, but to my mind at least it seemed clear that Custer was the strong man whose support was sought as the shadow of death was quickly closing down upon those heroes of the Seventh Cavalry.

To return to our own activities, the next day was passed in burying the dead, bringing the wounded down to camp from Reno Hill and making hand litters for their transportation.

As we had but a few spades, the burial of the dead was more of a pretence than a reality. A number were simply covered with sage brush. Yet we did our best.

At 6:30 p. m. on the 28th, the hand litters being finished, the command was put in march for the mouth of the Little Big Horn, where the *Far West* was supposed to be, but the difficulty of carrying the wounded by hand was so great, that although the march was continued until near midnight, we only covered a little over four and one-half miles.

The inefficiency of hand litters having been demonstrated, the next day, June 29th, was spent in constructing mule litters. The credit for these, which worked well, is due to Captain G. C. Doane of the Second Cavalry.

The hide was taken from dead animals, cut into strips or ropes, and tied to two poles about 22 feet long. The ropes were placed sufficiently close to make a comfortable bed when covered with blankets, and were long enough to permit a pole to be fastened to either side of a saddle placed on a mule. These shafts, if I may so call them, were then hitched in front to one mule and in rear to another, and a wounded man carried between.

At five o'clock p. m. we again started for the boat. The night was dark, the road unknown and the care of the wounded a difficult task.

When the Big Horn was reached, we found ourselves on a high plateau, and were at loss to find a way to descend. Finally fires were started in a gully, and by this light the wounded were taken down and at 1:30 a. m. placed on the boat.

The command followed to the banks of the river, and, tired out, each man threw himself down to sleep. I was one of the last to leave the bluff, and on reaching the bottom my horse in the darkness, struck a man lying on the ground a pretty hard blow with his foot. Whoever he was he did not seem to like it, and said he hoped that blank—blank fool riding that horse would stumble next time into the river. I did not join him in his wish, but considering his provocation, made no reply and quietly stole away.

[to be concluded]

The Race to the Sea

(Excerpts from Notes made during the first months of 1914, by Captain de Cosse-Brissac, 15th Chasseurs) Translated from *Revue de Cavalerie*

By

Captain ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, Cavalry, D. O. L.

Immediately after the Battle of the Marne and the approximate stabilization of the fronts between the opposing armies north of the Aisne, the French High Command aimed to envelop with all its available forces the enemy's right wing.

It engaged in this maneuver the greater part of its cavalry divisions. To these fell the role of covering the armies which were successively assembled as the front was prolonged from the Somme to the sea; then that of establishing contact with the German advance guards seeking to outdo them in speed in order to prevent this turning movement.

In the notes that follow, made from day to day by its commander, we see how a squadron of chasseurs of the 5th Cavalry Division was employed in its various missions as it participated in the extensive strategic maneuver known as "The Race to the Sea."

With this squadron we shall follow the vicissitudes of the struggle between the advance guards during the various phases of this war of movement in which the French cavalry performed prodigies of achievement, ruining unsparingly its effectives in order to facilitate the deployment of the French and British Armies on the terrain where they formed an impenetrable barrier to the invader.

Maps: Amiens, Lille, Dunkerque, 1-200,000

Amiens, Arras, Cambrai, Douai, Lille, Dunkerque, 1-80,000

I.

Operations north of the Somme, September 25th-October 3rd. Combats at Bapaume, September 26th; Monchy le Preux, October 1st; Arras, October 2nd.

SINCE break of day, reconnaissances have been operating toward Bapaume where some German patrols have been reported. At 9:00 A. M. the Division assembled on the east bank of the Ancre. It is going to move to Peronne and, if possible, to reoccupy the bridges there. I have the mission of protecting with my squadron the left flank of the Division during its march.

While I am reconnoitering Morval, the main body reaches Le Forest. No enemy in Morval, but toward Lesbeufs a patrol of German cavalry. I open fire at 1500 meters and it withdraws rapidly, less some of its troopers brought down by our shots. Almost everywhere, toward Gergicourt, Sailly-Saillisel, on the road from Peronne to Bapaume, machine guns and rifle shots are heard. These indicate isolated engagements between reconnoitering parties and patrols of the two armies.

Toward 3:00 P. M. I receive orders to rejoin my regiment in the vicinity of Le Priez Farm. The artillery of the Division is in position there, interdicting access to the Peronne road and sweeping the edges of the Bois de St. Pierre-Vaast. The German artillery is retaliating in its turn on the same road; it is shelling with shrapnel Colonel Robillot's brigade, which is making an uncovered movement. But the German fuses are poorly set and produce but little effect.

We have an impression that other German forces are coming into line north of those that last evening seized Peronne. Everywhere we have met with resistance; it has been impossible to force the screen of the enemy's covering forces and we already have encountered numerous batteries which seem to be opening the way for the hostile advance guards.

This evening we are quartered in Combles. Our squadron mess is installed in the house of some excellent people who are overjoyed to receive us. The family consists of an infirm old man, his daughter and granddaughter, the latter about 20 years of age. She left Combles at the end of August at the moment of the first passage of the Germans and she is persuaded, her parents as well, that the invader will never be seen again. That evening we, too, shared her optimism.

Some important forces are arriving; we are convinced that a skillful maneuver against the enemy's flank will drive him away. Alas! the next morning at the first hour, the reality was to open our eyes.

September 26th. Scarcely, in fact, had we left Combles at 7:00 A. M. when shells began falling on the border of the Bois des Bouteaux, 1 kilometer west of that locality. What has become of our poor hosts whose home the enemy entered so soon after our departure? We proceed to a position between Guillemont and Longueval where dispositions are made to defend the edges of the woods.

Toward noon the infantry arrives. And in what numbers! On all the roads leading from the west, are seen its columns in long ribbons. As soon as they have passed us, a new mission is reserved for us which we soon receive. The 5th Cavalry Division passes under the orders of General Conneau who takes command of the Cavalry Corps. The 10th Cavalry Division, General de Contades, joins us. The corps must with all speed locate the extremity of the German right wing and turn it. Our distant objectives are Bapaume and Cambrai; we take up the march at once.

I despatch a reconnaissance toward Morval where we were yesterday. An hour later it rejoins me. Lieutenant Bardet, who accompanied it, was able by crawling to approach Morval unseen. He arrived just as many howitzer batteries were going into position. This information indicates that this locality would become one of the pivots of the impending battle. New intelligence in the same vein is soon brought in by Captain de Chalaïn who, with two squadrons, has been determining some other important points near Bapaume.

A big action is already opening between Baucourt and Riencourt-les-Bapaume. Some territorial divisions commanded by General Brugere are resisting the enemy's drive as he attacks in force along the Cambrai road. Our horse artillery intervened toward the end of the day, and we held the Cambrai road between Bapaume and Fremicourt until 10:00 A. M. in order to allow some very hard pressed divisions to withdraw in good order.

Now it is our turn to leave. The Germans, in an impetuous dash, have broken the last barriers, the ultimate territorial units having been obliged to give way. With their retreat assured, our mission is ended; we have been called back on Puisieux-au-Mont.

September 27th. What a weary night march! A time of uncertain steps, long halts due to the many moving columns of infantry and convoys using our road. In spite of the fatigue, unalterable good humor obtains everywhere. For trials but stimulate French wit. It sparkles even in the most tragic moments. One fling, which has since become famous, was for the first time heard that night.

"What regiment's that?" our troopers ask in passing a column.

A voice in the darkness, followed by a bellow replies:

"We're the terrible bulls."

This epithet became legendary. The territorials acquired the name that night by the voice of one of their own men.

At 6:00 A. M. we arrive at Puisieux-au-Mont and leave again at 8:00 A. M., retracing a part of our way, for we have orders to move on Achiet-le-Grand to guard the Arras line.

I had to abandon some horses at Puisieux. These marches are ruining our effectives. My squadron now numbers but fifty-seven men mounted. Some horses have such saddle galls that they are becoming unserviceable. Their appearance is awful and they leave behind them such a putrid odor, that it makes us all sick.

The German's impenetrable covering screen behind which their masses prepare their offensive movements, is continually being prolonged northward before our front. Reconnaissances and patrols cannot pass; they are stopped by posts skillfully concealed in the borders of woods or in the neighborhood of road crossings. Machine guns interdict the surroundings, and in the intervals which appear to be free, great detachments of cavalry suddenly reveal themselves. Their tactics are simple; they fall back before us, enticing our horsemen into ambushes prepared in advance, whence these are fired at and whence they never return. As for the enemy cavalymen, on the other hand, there is never any isolated aggression. The German offensive occurs only in masses, with very powerful means of action, at a time selected by their command. The principal indication of this, is the engagement in action of the guns. They begin to be heard at nightfall near Achiet-le-Grand, but the energetic *riposte* of our batteries silenced them. The day for the decisive attack at that point has not yet arrived.

That evening we occupy with great vigilance the outposts near Douchy-les-Ayette. This, however, does not keep our young folks from exchanging jokes with the troops returning to our lines:

"Hey! you fellows, are you regulars or reservists?"

"Have you seen any Boches?"

"Have you killed many of 'em?"

"Are they very handsome?"

Such is the sort of questions launched by them in the darkness. Replies anonymous, sometimes ironic, sometimes bitter, according to the mentalities of those who make them, excite their hilarity. We don't mind this by-play; it serves to keep the men awake.

September 28th. The exploration continues to extend ever northward, as far as the outskirts of the railroad to Boiry St. Martin and Boisleux-au-Mont. For my squadron patrol duty, I have sent parts of it in all directions and remain almost alone. But here comes important news. A man comes to us from the vicinity of Cambrai. He had been taken prisoner by the Germans and locked up in the old barracks of the 4th Cuirassiers in that town. With two of his fellow citizens he managed to escape, gained Douai and returned to us. During the night of his evasion he saw great quantities of artillery passing through the city toward Bapaume. Cambrai is thronged with troops of all arms, having detrained there. North of the city the Germans are digging trenches as far as Ain-le-Noble. In all probability they are keeping some sad surprises in store for us in that quarter.

By the end of the day we were all reunited, squadron and regiment, at Neuville-Vitasse. Dinners, even though taken at a late hour, vary between 9:00 p. m. and midnight; they are truly a moment of relaxation after the tension of such long, hard days. As on hunting nights, each of us recounts his prowess. The operations in which we are taking part afford many occasions to the lieutenants for independent action. The intimacy of meals in the mess encourage the recital of their adventures. Today, Lieutenant de Gasset paid the Germans in their own coin. He found himself with a small detachment in sight of a German squadron. Allowing himself to be pursued, he led it on to some troopers whom he had carefully hidden in a beet field. Some well adjusted volleys threw this squadron into frightful disorder and the survivors quickly disappeared. By the account of this exploit, we were greatly diverted.

September 29th. A rainy, monotonous day, passed in long waits in the fields. In reserve until evening, we then returned to our cantonments of the previous day.

September 30th. Resumption of the movement northward. Some reconnaissances, commanded by Lieutenants de Bourmont and Gillois, are sent north of the Scarpe, on the forward road from Cambrai, Arleux and the Sensee canal. They could not gain their objectives, and returned that evening after a thousand experiences, encounters, and exchange of shots with hostile patrols hidden in posts cunningly dissimulated, pursued by whole squadrons which are jealously watching the terrain. Ever the impenetrable screen!

We must now guard the passages of the Scarpe. With my squadron I am, at 10:00 A. M., at Pelves. There I remain all day. Some inhabitants inform me of a singular incident: During the morning two British officers crossed

Pelves, asking in several places if English troops had been seen. Their inquiries completed, they left in the direction of Hamblain. Near a mill, some troopers, suspected of being German cavalymen, were awaiting them. Then, nothing more, they having mysteriously disappeared upon our approach.

That evening we learn that the 27th Dragoons had encountered the evening before, the 28th, a serious check at Courcelles-le-Conde. Directed to occupy that village, in which the enemy was reported, the regiment advanced in line of skirmishers, the colonel leading, but with no careful reconnaissance or artillery preparation. A machine gun concealed in the church tower suddenly opened fire and literally riddled the attack. Many were killed or wounded. The case was cited of a young subaltern recently graduated from St. Cyr who was one of the first victims. He had joined the regiment that noon, was immediately assigned to the command of a platoon and at 1:00 P. M. he was killed. He was, alas, the son of my major who, but a few days before, had been rejoicing at having him soon join us at the front.

October 1st. All night and this entire day we have been in Pelves. From the first hour of the morning, however, a strong cannonading has been going on in the direction of Douai. Is it a French or a German attack? We cannot tell. Toward 3:00 P. M. some squadrons of the 5th Chasseurs arrived in the Bois du Sart and reconnoitered some movements of the enemy reported in the direction of Boiry-Notre Dame. We reinforce our posts. At 5:00 A. M. a hot fusillade, accompanied by shouts and hurrahs, is heard on the side of Monchy-le-Preux. Some bullets even fall on the roofs of the first houses of Pelves. The Germans, under cover, had arrived on the edge of Monchy-le-Preux and were attempting to carry it in a brusque attack. The infantry regiment occupying it resists energetically.

Unfortunately we were ignorant then of the liaison of all arms which later came to be usual; and we knew nothing of what was taking place 3 kilometers away. We are at the mercy of erroneous information, and our posts, which had been seeing some small infantry groups retire, told us that Monchy-le-Preux was taken. In these circumstances our situation in Pelves is critical. If the enemy sweeps north of Monchy, the bridge at Roeux, the only one by which we can fall back, will be taken under the enemy's fire. The command must have considered our situation at Pelves accordingly, for at 7:00 A. M. an order arrives for us to cross to the left bank of the Scarpe. By following the towpath of the canal, that I had had reconnoitered during the day, we arrive at the bridge at Roeux in a few minutes. There, new orders. The regiment goes to Fresnes-les-Montauban. My squadron is to occupy the outposts at Vitry-en-Artois.

With a few cyclists at my disposal, I form an advance guard. By night they can advance rapidly and silently, dropping at the least alarm into a ditch and sending back word without delay. Near Plouvain one of my cyclists returns. He has heard German being spoken near a mill and declares

he has seen armed men. As I want to be certain, I send him back again. Some mounted men move forward and soon bring in two young persons. They are of Plouvain and had gone out, they said, to see the fires started through the countryside by the enemy. A singular and culpable distraction! I admonish them and have them conducted home.

We cross Plouvain and Biache without difficulty. An absolute silence reigns, our march favored by magnificent moonlight. I direct the advance guard to reconnoiter the exits of Vitry-en-Artois, for we cannot venture blindly into this agglomeration of structures. Some detonations startle the night. Lieutenant de Gasset and his advance guard have run into barricades. The enemy holds Vitry.

We fall back on Biache where we occupy the bridges over the Scarpe and the canal, after having warned the regiment that it is impossible for us to enter Vitry-en-Artois.

October 2nd. All night on the *qui vive*. Some French patrols pass and repass through Biache. In all directions shots are heard. At 4:00 A. M. we are ordered to withdraw on Fampoux. There we find the remainder of the regiment, which had been obliged to evacuate Fresnes-en-Montauban in all haste. The enemy is advancing everywhere north of the Scarpe. Yesterday he occupied Douai, today he marches on Arras.

At Fampoux we recross to the right bank of the Scarpe. The entire Division is assembled there. Dispositions are made to fight on foot and we hold the crests between Fenchy and the Cambrai road.

The battle engages on a large front. Monchy-le-Preux has fallen; Beaurains, Tilloy are shattered by shell. It must be the same north of the Scarpe. The German heavy artillery scatters its great projectiles on Athies and the dismounted combatants of the 1st Cavalry Division. Solidly, we await the coming of the hostile infantry, but it does not appear yet. The precursory bombardment of our front lines prepares its coming. This shelling is intense and our frail covering force will not hold long, unless we are promptly succored. Happily, by the end of the day, important infantry reinforcements arrive from Arras, relieving us on our positions, positions destined to mark the front until the last months of the war.

In the night we regain our horses. They are carrying us to the rear in order to move northward the next day. The traversing of Arras at midnight is lugubrious. It is a desert, the feet of our horses resounding on the pavement, covering the sound of distant explosions of big shells which fall nearer and nearer the city.

Another atrocious march! After several nights without sleep, it is impossible to keep awake. One feels as if taken by an invincible vertigo, losing the notion of existence until one wonders how one managed in such moments to retain one's seat in the saddle.

Toward 2:00 A. M. we reach Noyelles. There rations await us. It

requires all the energy of officers and non-commissioned officers to supervise the issues. The men are all in, but, cost what it may, we oblige them to make a meal, else they would sink on the ground without eating. Amenable, however, to the orders of their leaders, they obey without a murmur. These duties fulfilled, we, in our turn, take a quick repast, and then a very short repose.

II.

In the mining basin of Lens—Combats about Lens—Entry into line of the 21st Army Corps, October 6th—Combats on the Lys—New and Old Berquin—La Gorgue—Covering the British Army—Combats of Fosse—Merville—Sailly sur la Lys—Withdrawal of the German Army before the British.

October 3rd. At 11 o'clock in the morning the Division is at Loos. General de Mitry reviews us. He has just been assigned to command a second cavalry corps, to which the Division is attached. He is surprised at our distressing condition, horses broken down, packs poorly made, clothing dirty, shakos broken in, all this sorry equipment the consequence of several weeks without a rest, but for which we are not to be blamed. A long halt this afternoon between Loos and Lens. Only the reconnoitering parties are working. One of these I sent toward Pont-a-Vendin; it returns late in the evening with important information: three enemy batteries of artillery have arrived late this afternoon and went into cantonment at Pont-a-Vendin where they are poorly guarded. The *maréchal des logis* who made this reconnaissance succeeded in reaching close to where they are parked. He received several shots as he was leaving, but with all his troopers got away along the railway track under cover of the darkness without being disturbed.

The sum of the information received by the end of the day, confirms the estimate that the enemy is attacking on a very wide front, north and south of Lens. The 1st Cavalry Division, south of the 5th, reports that heavy columns are marching from Henin-Lietard on Billy-Montigny. Before them the 70th Division, General Fayolle, is slowly falling back on Vimy.

October 4th. We have been passing the night in readiness in Mazingarbe. At the first hour, the light brigade marches as advance guard of the Division on Loison. A German post occupies the Loison railway station. From the last houses of the city of the Grand Conde my troopers open fire on this post. There is no reply. But upon leaving the town of Saint Auguste, the squadrons behind me come under fire of the batteries reported the evening before at Pont-a-Vendin. Their advance is halted, and I receive orders to turn back and hold the railway crossing west of Lens at the crossroads of the Bethune and La Bassée highways. While this action is going on, the enemy violently attacks the passages of the Canal de la Deule and the Lens railway station. These points are held by the cyclist group and the dragoons of the 3rd Brigade, who resist vigorously in spite of severe losses. But toward mid-day they are obliged to abandon Lens, the enemy having turned the city on the south and is marching on Lieven. Shells are falling on Loos on the Bethune road and on neighboring localities.

We withdraw on Bully-Grenay, where the artillery remained in position until the end of the day. Colonel Cochin, commanding the 16th Dragoons, was seriously wounded this morning in front of the Lens railway station, his regiment and the cyclists having been sorely tried.

It is a sorrowful sight, during our march in retreat, on this, as on all the roads to the west of Lens. A panic stricken crowd is rushing along, composed largely of people on foot carrying in bundles and on baby carriages, their most cherished possessions. Carriages, handcarts, and innumerable vehicles of all sorts overloaded with bedding and furniture, seized in haste from homes abandoned. Old people, the sick, the infirm are perched on these tottering loads. Others, less fortunate, are being carried in wheelbarrows. Shrapnel is bursting above this throng and creating terror. Women and children flee through the fields, stumbling and falling into ditches. Families are separated and little ones are abandoned. The scene is heartrending. Cursed be the barbarous people that have loosed this cruel war upon the world!

Night falls. Some groups of these poor folk stop in the fields beside the road; they seem to be stunned by Destiny, resigning themselves in advance to worse tribulations yet to come.

October 5th. From Barlin, where we passed the night, we again move onward. With my reduced squadron, for I now have but fifty men mounted, I am assigned as support to a battery of artillery which has the mission of interdicting access to the Bethune road. Having taken position at the exit of Noeux, this battery has been firing without interruption from 10:00 A. M. until 9:00 P. M. Thanks to it, the enemy has not been able to debouch from Aix-Noulette and cannot reach Petits Sains. The precision of its fire has inflicted severe damage upon him, all due to the initiative of Lieutenant de Gassart, my first lieutenant. Climbing to the top of a high factory chimney, he observed the fire with his glasses, while a telephonist at the base of the chimney transmitted to the battery commander his observations of the shots. Every movement made by the enemy was promptly noted, and each time a fraction attempted to engage on the road, it was at once dispersed by well directed salvos. Gassart returned to us delighted with his day, a day indeed well spent.

While the enemy has been stopped on the side of Neux-les-Mines, toward Bouvigny, to the south, serious engagements are taking place. A squadron of the 29th Dragoons has been almost completely destroyed there, its commander, Captain Claire, being killed. Charging in front of the enemy as foragers, mounted, they fell upon a line of skirmishers concealed in the vegetation. A few volleys at point blank range, turned this squadron into a frightful carnage.

By the end of the day, the 10th Cavalry Division had prolonged our line to the north, the enemy not having made any effort in that quarter.

October 6th. Still on advance guard duty. From Saily-Labourse where we passed several hours during the night, I am directed on Mazingarbe-les-Brebis. Impossible to cross the railway line, as it is occupied by some enemy

posts. Shots and skirmishes without results. Then a halt in a work pit under construction. I had never imagined the possibility of a war waged in the mining district, in the midst of the miners' houses, factories and spur tracks. Yet this is what is occurring today. Movements are difficult here, the circulation awkward, with ambushes lurking everywhere.

At 2:00 p. m. the entry into line of the 21st Corps is announced. Its artillery is already in action toward Bouvigny; in rear of us, entering Bully-Grenay, are some chasseur battalions, followed closely by batteries ready to co-operate in the artillery duel which is developing violently along the entire front. The mission of the cavalry here is finished. They are awaiting us with impatience farther north where the main forces of the German cavalry have been reported. It is imperative that the detrainings of the British Army now going on in the region of Hazebrouck-Saint Omer, be covered at all costs.

October 7th. A night and a morning of rest at Annequin, 4 kilometers from Bethune. Via Vielle Chapelle we gain La Gorgue. At 10:00 p. m. I receive an order to send two platoons on outpost: one of them, commanded by the Sous-Lieutenant Saint Paul, is charged with occupying the railway station of Steenwerck; the other, under Lieutenant Gillois, goes to Erquinghem. I remain with only a few troopers, while to provide these two detachments I am obliged to use almost my entire squadron.

October 8th. The light brigade moves on Vieux-Berquin. Some important forces of German cavalry coming from Belgium are advancing north of the Lille-Hazebrouck railroad. Their scouts are already in contact with our reconnoitering parties on the railway line. Saint Paul, by rifle fire, has been holding them at a respectful distance all through the night and morning, but their numbers are growing; on the point of being overwhelmed he falls back on us as we arrive. Shots are heard on all sides; it is impossible to tell whence they come. And what can cavalry do formed in column on these narrow roadways bordered by ditches full of water that cross innumerable pastures?

After having been sent to establish the liaison at La Rue-du-Bois with the units of the 4th Cavalry Division, I rejoin my regiment for the night at La Gorgue. It is charged with holding the bridges of the Lys. I am guarding the bridge over the canal. These measures of security have been taken under the menace of large forces of infantry appearing behind the cavalry, and cost what it may it is necessary to stop the enemy on this natural cut. But our withdrawal leaves the field free to the enemy who advances as far as the Lys.

[to be concluded]

Chinese Cavalry Produce a Decisive Victory-- Defeat and Death of General Kuo Sun-Lin

By

Brigadier General HENRY J. REILLY, O. R. C.*

PICTURE a sandy plain, with groups of bushes here and there, ground and foliage covered by snow; sand and snow blowing in clouds which limit the sight to a few hundred yards, and an occasional vision of a thousand at the most. The thermometer is well below zero, Fahrenheit.

A hundred yards or so to the west, are the straggling buildings which mark the western edge of the town of Hsin Min-fu. Here and there to the north and south, small groups of individual infantry soldiers can occasionally be seen. Not more than a hundred yards to the west, is a column of field guns and caissons moving south. The horses have their heads down and the drivers are crouched in their saddles, both man and beast struggling to make headway against the bitter wind and the sand and snow which it carries into their faces. The cannoneers, stumbling alongside the carriages, from time to time have to grab the wheel spokes to help the horses pull the guns and caissons out of ruts and over minor ridges which obstruct their progress.

A Chinese colonel of field artillery, with a few of his staff officers, is talking to an American (the author), who, with a Chinese companion, is in civilian clothes. An occasional burst of machine gun fire, rifle shots here and there, and from time to time, reports of field guns and the screech of a shell, followed by the explosion, are heard. The heavy machine gun, infantry, and artillery fire which has persisted throughout the night, has died down. It is that period of relative calm which always follows a successful or unsuccessful attack, during which both sides readjust themselves to the new situation.

The attack of General Kuo Sun-lin's army on the troops of the Manchurian war lord, Marshal Chang Tso-lin, entrenched along the Liao Ho (River) about forty miles west of Mukden, had been stopped. During the late afternoon and early evening of the day before, they had captured the advanced positions, but by shortly after dawn had been held up everywhere in their assault on the main position just across the frozen river.

A Cavalry Coup

Suddenly, an increased number of pistol shots and yells are heard in the town of Hsin Min-fu, the streets of which are full of artillery and other trains of the troops to the immediate front. Around the corner of the nearest

*U. S. M. A., 1904; 2d, 13th, and 15th Regiments, U. S. Cavalry, 1904-14: Colonel, Commanding 149th F. A. and 83d Inf. Brigade, 1917-1919.

building suddenly emerges a young cavalry officer followed by his men, all at a gallop, with their pistols out. The blue cloths around their necks show them to be the enemy's cavalry. The officer and several of the men fire their pistols at a nearby group of mounted soldiers, who are hit, or, considering discretion the better part of valor, fall off their horses. Spying the Colonel with his group of officers, they turn quickly towards them. In a few jumps they surrounded the group while pointing their pistols at them.

At the same time other groups of galloping cavalry appear through the blowing snow and sand. Spying the moving artillery column, they soon surround and capture it. The artillerymen and officers, nearly frozen, worn



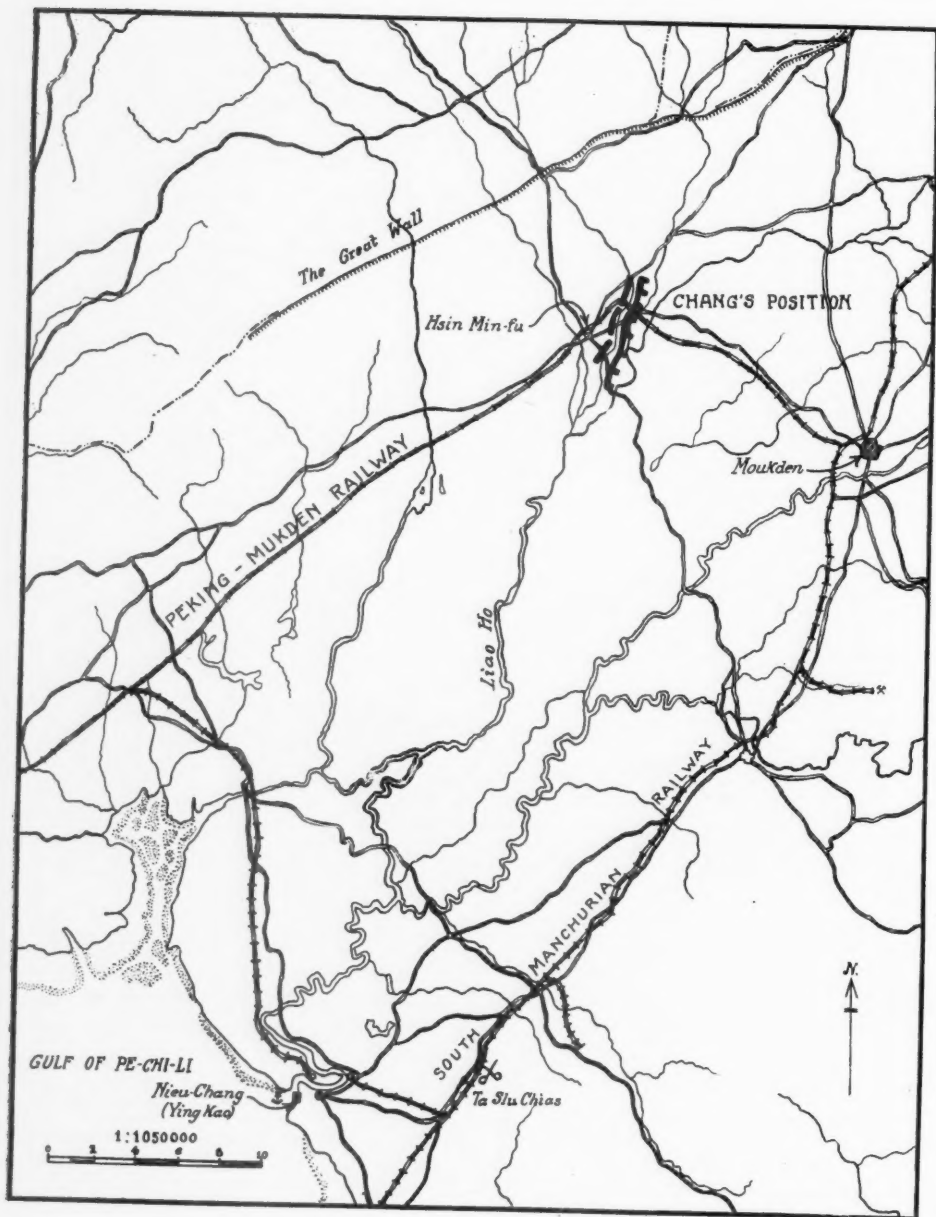
After the Charge

Enemy cavalry, mounted and dismounted, relieving the Colonel and the Adjutant of field artillery regiment, of maps, orders and arms.

out with several day's fighting and marching without shelter of any kind, and very little food, make virtually no resistance.*

Pistol and other shots, with yells here and there from parts of the battlefield out of sight because of the wind storm, indicate that similar scenes are taking place.

*The author after showing his American passport and having the Chinese interpreter who was with him tell the young officer that he was an American newspaper man merely there to see what a Chinese battle looked like, and stated that he would like to go to a nearby mission, which could be distinguished because of the Red Cross flag flying over its hospital, was turned loose when the cavalry went off with its prisoners.



What had happened? The same thing which has occurred again and again and again when true cavalry leaders followed by men and animals capable of surviving any hardship, have used their forces to fight and destroy the enemy, regardless of every other consideration. A negative victory which would have resulted in a period of stabilization, has been turned into a decisive victory which ends a campaign.

Kuo Sun-lin, with 80,000 infantry and 80 guns, and very little cavalry, had started to march from the neighborhood of Shanhaikwan where the Great Wall of China comes down to the Gulf of Pe-Chi-li north to drive Marshal Chang Tso-lin from his capital at Mukden and his control of Manchuria. After passing the head of the Gulf of Pe-Chi-li, he had planned to approach Mukden from the south along the line of the South Manchurian Railway. The population along this route is denser than that along any other line of approach, and their houses would have given him a good chance to shelter his men and animals, and to supplement the food and forage supplies which he could carry with him. Also, the country along this line is hilly here and there, affording some cover for troops in the maneuvering prior to, and during an attack.

However, the Japanese would not permit Kuo to cross into this territory. As they had greatly reinforced the railway troops always present, and as they plainly indicated that they would use force to keep him out, if necessary, he followed the line of the Peking-Mukden Railroad. The last 150 miles of this road runs over a barren plain north to Hsin Min-fu, at which town it turns east to Mukden, forty miles to the east.

Historic Terrain

About half way between Hsin Min-fu and Mukden, the Liao Ho, with several branches, flows south, ultimately to empty into the Gulf of Pe-Chi-li at Nieuchang, now called Yingkao. All this territory is historic. The outskirts of Nieuchang were the scene, during the Russo-Japanese War, of the Russian General Mischenko's cavalry raid. The Japanese were given sufficient warning of this raid by the present Marshal Chang Tso-lin, then a leader in Japanese pay, of Hung-huzes, irregular Chinese cavalry.*

*While on leave from the Philippines in 1905, the author was permitted to visit Port Arthur and then the rear of the Japanese army. The Russo-Japanese War was then in its final stage. During his trip he met and spent some time with a Japanese who had grown a pigtail and lived for a number of years in Manchuria prior to the Russo-Japanese War. This young Japanese throughout the war had led a force apparently varying from 500 to several thousand, in raids far to the rear of the Russian army. Besides destroying some culverts and bridges on the railroad, he had made himself a decided pest by attacking wagon trains, small detachments, and the many other groups which exist in the rear of a large army, and which are necessary for its maintenance. His men, apparently, with the exception of a few Japanese officers and non-commissioned officers, who had also grown pigtails, were a mixture of Hung-huzes, Mongolians, and the other more or less wild mounted men found all over this part of the earth.

The plains around Hsin Min-fu were, in general, the scene of the flank attack made by General Nogi, with the troops which, after the surrender of Port Arthur, he brought north to take a successful part in the battle of Mukden.

Knowing that the Japanese would not permit General Kuo Sun-lin to enter the zone of the Southern Manchuria Railway, Marshal Chang Tso-lin entrenched his force just east of the Liao Ho, the center being at the point where the railway from Hsin Min-fu to Mukden crosses that river. This position, parallel to and not far from the eastern edge of the Japanese railway zone, insured his rear's being protected and left only a relatively small space on



A Battery Commander

With his detail, he is taking up an observation position just prior to action.

either flank in which troops could operate to turn them. To the west of the Liao Ho he prepared a first position, not strongly held, but designed to delay and break up the units of the attacking force.

Kuo's Plan of Battle

General Kuo's plan was based on the assumption that his force was sufficiently superior in numbers to that of the enemy, to enable him to attack their whole position from the front, thus pinning them down, while at the same time, his left and right flanks turned their flanks. While his force was superior in numbers, he underestimated the length of line which his opponents would entrench and would be able to hold, due to a considerable reinforcement

of machine guns and a number of batteries of field artillery unexpectedly obtained by them at the last moment. Also, Kuo's force was so deficient in cavalry strength that he did not have enough to thoroughly scout both flanks, much less resist any enemy cavalry which might appear. The few aviators with whom he had started, had either found some excuse to remain behind at one of the last camping points, or had flown to Mukden, Chang's headquarters, the place at which they were trained, and from which Kuo had taken them when he revolted from Chang Tso-lin some weeks before.

The attack of the infantry well supported by the field artillery, was successful in wiping out the first position. The attack on the second and main position was stopped by the fire coming from it. At this moment, a considerable force of Mukden cavalry turned Kuo's left or north flank and rear. The result of the cavalry attack, which was pushed home, was, that with the exception of some infantry and artillery on Kuo's right or south flank, which successfully retreated to the south, Kuo's entire force was killed, wounded, captured, or dispersed. He was captured and subsequently shot.

A Mongol Chieftan

Some of this cavalry belonged to the troops maintained by Marshal Chang Tso-lin in and around Mukden. The greater part of it came from Heilungking, the northern province of Manchuria, just south of the Amur River; and from along the more or less indefinite Mongolian-Manchurian frontier. It was commanded by the Tupan or Military Governor of Tsitsihar, a tough, typical old mounted soldier, who is a worthy descendant of Ghenghis Khan's conquering army.

Some days after the battle, when the "old man" had the opportunity, he gave a banquet at which a great many toasts were drunk. Amongst other things he said that the recent battle had proven what he had always maintained—that good cavalry animated by the spirit of Ghenghis Khan could always get the better of all these new-fangled contraptions, such as artillery, flying machines, armored trains, and all the other machinery which might be fine for men who really did not know how to fight, but could always be overcome by true, rough, fighting soldiers.

His force had come partially by rail and partially by marching from Tsitsihar, the capital from which he administered Heilungking. Where moved by rail, the horses were in open gondola cars; the men sometimes in box cars, but in many cases, also in gondola cars. While marching, both men and horses were in the open practically continuously. The only transportation available was that of country carts, requisitioned from peasants before starting out. Being of limited number and capacity, a relatively small amount of forage was carried.

Yet, all animals seen were full of energy and in first class spirits, many of them showing a disposition to get out of hand when at the gallop during the attack. As far as could be seen a considerable number were unshod. With

their long hair, uncared for forelocks, manes, tails, and fetlocks, the general appearance of the majority was that of wild horses recently caught.

The small horses or ponies of North China and Mongolia average from something over twelve hands to fourteen hands, with a weight around 700 pounds. Like our western broncho, they are inured to both excessive cold and heat, and know how to pick up a living where a well bred horse would be in grave difficulties.

The armament, as far as could be seen, consisted of a rifle for every man, an automatic pistol for all officers and a large proportion of the men, with



Transportation of Animals

Typical method of transportation by rail; no stalls, no shelter, and little or nothing under foot.

here and there an automatic rifle. Chinese troops everywhere take to the

automatic pistol and will always carry two if they can get them. Every general has a mounted body guard armed with automatic rifles as well as pistols.

Budenny and His Cavalry

The part played by the Manchurian cavalry in this campaign was as decisive as that of Sheridan's cavalry during the week which culminated in Appomattox. The success of the cavalry recalled to the author's mind the decisive part played by the Russian Cavalry General Budenny in bringing about the retreat of the Poles from the line of the Dnieper River in the summer of 1920. The subsequent decisive defeat on the Vistula led to the surrender or dispersal of the greater part of the Russian army. However, Budenny with his relatively small force of 20,000 continued to be such a thorn in the side of the Poles, that one of their best and most determined leaders, General Sikorski, whom the author accompanied, was sent out with a special command to capture him. Though Budenny delayed to make a final attack on Zamose, he was too quick for the Poles, the greater part of whose force consisted of artillery and infantry. With his whole command, he escaped the trap set for him.

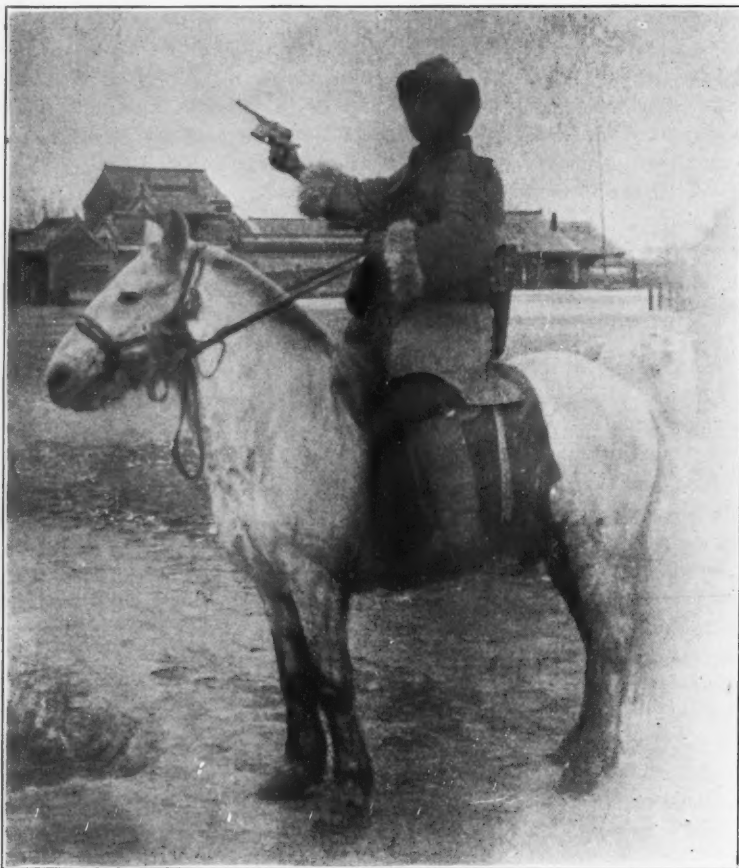
If Budenny, an illiterate sergeant of cavalry under the Czar's regime, and the Tupan of Heilungking, an equally illiterate, tough old Tartar, who fought his way to the top, could produce such results, each with a force of about 20,000, what vistas of future cavalry successes must open to cavalry leaders who have had the advantage of extensive military education, and a properly organized, armed, and equipped force, backed up by the resources of a first class power such as the United States.

As delighted as any cavalryman may well be with such demonstrations of the fact that the power of modern fire arms has not placed his arm with the Macedonian phalanx in the museum of military antiquities, the mentally honest cavalryman cannot but ask himself if the continued fall in the general estimate as to the value of cavalry is not largely the fault of cavalry itself. Every cavalryman the world over insists that his arm is a combat one. While doing so, have we sufficiently studied the changes which modern weapons have brought about, or are we too inclined to believe the horse the first consideration?

From the horse point of view, Sheridan's cavalry in the last year of the Civil War, with its many poor riders and many men mounted, not only on poor horses, but even on mules, would have made a poor showing by comparison with the splendid cavalry which rode so gallantly to its death on the battlefields of the Franco-Prussian War. However, Sheridan's cavalry was successful, while the French cavalry only furnished targets for the German infantry and artillery. The cavalry with which the powers started the Great War was splendidly horsed, yet in the early days preceding the First Battle of the Marne, and in the subsequent race to the sea, the cavalry failed to play a

dominant part. Also, their horses, unable to withstand hardship, died in such numbers that whole regiments found themselves on foot.

History shows that the days in which cavalry has been most considered are those in which it played a prominent part in combat. In those days its two main characteristics were striking power and mobility. Its striking power was not due to the speed of its attack as much as to the weight of the attack.



One of the Victors

A cavalry officer with Mauser pistol drawn, as he came to a halt at the end of the charge, resulting in the capture of a regiment of field artillery.

Long centuries elapsed before the charge at an extended gallop became the accepted mode of assault. In other words, history shows the first point to be considered is how to damage the enemy, not how to stick to formations and methods which succeeded in the past, and then give up because they no longer

work. Or, putting it differently, are we living up to the age-old maxim that methods of application must constantly change, but the principles of war remain immutable?

The last few years we have heard a great deal of fire and movement. However, there is nothing new in the use of fire, coupled with movement, to produce success. The British owed their victories over the French in the Hundred Years' War to using fire of arrows and subsequent attacks of mounted men, to meet the headlong mounted attacks of the French chivalry.

Subatai and his Mongols successfully invaded Europe in the 13th century.



A Regimental Wagon Train

This is made up of commandeered country carts and drivers, but under charge of officer and detail, and is parked in fields as regiment enters action.

We know now that history generally woefully exaggerates his numbers. He beat the Christian armies because his strategy and tactics were far superior. Excellent reconnaissance, wide turning movements to effect the concentration desired for battle, and fire and movement on the battlefield, gave him victory. His mounted archers "shot up" the men and horses of the Christian forces for a considerable period of time before the mounted assault was made by the units armed with hand weapons.

The Mongol cavalry like that of every race, born, living and dying mounted, used tough animals capable of standing every hardship and fending largely for themselves. Through the Middle Ages, and well beyond, cavalry was more interested in having animals which could successfully carry the

weight of the riders, arms and equipment than in any other consideration. In other words, armament was not subordinated to mobility. Mobility was subordinated to striking power. The kind of horse used was the one which could do the work under war conditions. What had to be done in battle was the starting point from which arms, equipment, kinds of mounts, etc. were deduced.

Civil War Methods

During the Civil War and afterwards, we used the same method. It is true that the appearance of our cavalry, and in particular its mounts, made a poor showing alongside the brilliant, dashing, and well mounted European cavalry. However, this same European cavalry which had subordinated power to damage the enemy when met up with to mobility, and limited the number of men they could put in battle to the number of excellent horses they could obtain in peace, failed to produce any decisive effect.

The whole initial German movement in France depended for its success upon a marching and fighting right flank. Von Kluck with his infantry made a gallant effort, but failed, due to lack of mobility. The German cavalry with him failed because of lack of numbers and sufficient combat power for the numbers they had.

Would Sheridan with 50,000 to 100,000 of his type of cavalry, who put fighting as their first and last objective, have failed, even though their speed would have been less than that of the German cavalry, and many of their mounts farm horses of all types and ages, and some mules? The Russo-Japanese War and the Great War show that more than ever, two immense armies of infantry and artillery tend to neutralize each other.

The so called "race to the sea" in the fall of 1914, is an excellent example of how infantry forces, even with railways and good roads, cannot outflank each other. Step by step, the Allied and German forces slowly arrived, checking each other until the British Channel was reached. No decision resulted, only the trench line already existing from Switzerland to the Oise River was extended until a natural obstacle halted the attempt of each side to outflank the other.

Marshal Foch in creating his strategic reserve by using tremendous numbers of motor trucks, tried to give it the mobility necessary to insure its presence at the point desired. In this country we have the trucks but not the roads to insure their timely use. Also, the steady development of "attack" aviation is going to make the use of well marked roads as difficult as is the use today of a railway line within artillery range. Not only mobility, but mobility across country is essential. This can only be had by cavalry. However, a strategic reserve to be of value must have numbers, must be able to strike a real blow when used, and must not have dissipated its power of mobility by previous use.

Numbers mean large quantities of horses. There can be no doubt that our cavalry of twenty years ago needed many improvements in the horse line. No

serious cavalryman can question the necessity for, and excellence of the work done, by the Cavalry School at Riley and our Remount Service. Neither can the benefits to be derived from polo and horse shows be doubted. On the other hand, the older cavalry officers are rapidly passing from the active list. They are the men who knew the days of long continuous marches, of months in the field with no great transportation facilities, who knew and used tough types of animals, who believed in and were taught that cavalry units must have man power. There are some indications that this knowledge is passing with them and that the new generation inclines towards the European cavalry type.

Undoubtedly long continued excessive economy demands the small cavalry units of today. On the other hand, are we breeding cavalry officers who, like the Europeans, are satisfied because of the ease with which they can be handled, instead of being dissatisfied because of their small combat power?



The Fate of the Defeated

A Chinese general captured after defeat, and with his wife, shot.

Similarly, is there not a tendency towards small calibre weapons, relatively small numbers of automatic rifles and machine guns, and decidedly limited ammunition supplies, all on the ground of mobility? Are we planning and training from the point of view of delivering a successful attack against infantry when we meet it? If not, is not the infantry justified in believing the usefulness of cavalry to be increasingly limited?

The field artillery passes through successive periods of increasing mobility at the cost of combat power. These periods are always coincident with peace. A dashing regiment of artillery with a mounted band, the cannoneers on the chests, unimpeded by too much ammunition, too many intrenching tools, telephones, heavy reel carts, camouflage for gun positions, and equipped with carriages light enough to be gracefully swung around a riding hall at a gallop, necessarily delights every mounted artilleryman.

A regiment with its horse power concentrated primarily in pulling on the march at a walk and into position at a trot at the most; its carriages carrying

ample ammunition, plenty of good size intrenching tools; telephones heavy enough to always work, wire enough to provide real liaison with the infantry, and camouflage to prevent early discovery by the enemy, thus insuring fire for the infantry when they most need it; is the regiment which helps the infantry forward or protects it from the enemy, the only excuse for the existence of artillery.

Should we not start with the weapons necessary to meet infantry on equal terms and provide horses heavy enough to carry them? Such cavalry will still be more mobile than infantry, while really able to fight it when met. If our present highly mobile type of cavalry is also necessary, why not go back to the old division into light and heavy cavalry?

The cavalry screen, particularly with the wide front covered by modern armies, necessitates such a dispersion of the cavalry that it is doubtful if it can be assembled in time to participate in a rencontre battle. Even if the concentration is affected, the chances are the animals will be worn out by the long, hasty marches made.

With airplanes for strategic reconnaissance and the power of modern infantry by the volume and range of its fire to protect itself from surprise attack, cannot the tactical reconnaissance be performed by small bodies of scouts attached to infantry divisions or army corps?

The preliminary artillery duel in which one artillery was to vanquish the other, has never worked out. The air service readily admits that the much-talked-of preliminary air battle will never take place. Is there any more likelihood of the preliminary decisive combat between the opposing cavalries? In the last war the French cavalry sought it. The Germans avoided it while shooting up the French cavalry wherever it showed itself in considerable bodies.

The abolition of the cavalry screen would free the cavalry to be concentrated in the rear as a strategic reserve in the hands of the general commanding the armies in the field. Its proper armament even at the cost of some of its mobility, plus numbers, would insure a cavalry force capable of producing decisive results.

That cavalry has no place on a battlefield where two opposing infantries have heavily entrenched themselves, and their respective artilleries have pock marked the whole countryside, is a foregone conclusion. However, it takes time for infantry to so settle itself. Cannot a large mobile *FIGHTING* cavalry force threatening one flank or the other, or the weak center of a widely flung line, prevent its so settling? Cannot a combination of attack aviation, artillery, and heavy machine gun fire support, and deployment in depth as well as breadth, insure the repetition today of General French's famous and successful mounted break through the Boer line in the South African War?

Prince Hohenlohe, when asked the first three duties of artillery, replied, "The first is to hit, the second to hit, and the third to hit."

Are not the first three duties of cavalry the same as they were in the days when cavalry was the master of the battlefield—to fight, to fight, to fight!

The 1926 Cavalry Leadership Test For Small Units

By

Captain W. B. Bradford, 9th Cavalry

SMILED upon by fortune and favored by the usual superb fall weather of Fort Riley, the 1926 Cavalry Leadership Test For Small Units was brought to a successful conclusion. Of the six competing platoons from the lettered troops of the Second Cavalry, that of Troop C, led by Lieutenant Daniel F. J. DeBardeleben, placed first. Though this platoon by no means surpassed all others in all phases of the test, yet its uniform excellence throughout was such as to win the general praise of all.

The scores of each platoon in each phase of the test are shown in the following table.

Platoon Leader	Lieut. O'Shea Troop A	Lieut. Phillips Troop B	Lieut. De Bardeleben Troop C	Lieut. Arnes Troop E	Lieut. Wofford Troop F	Lieut. Burnside Troop G	Possible Score
Individual Phase							
Officers	4.00	5.00	4.00	4.00	5.00	5.00	5.00
N. C. Os	2.73	2.49	2.91	2.64	2.76	2.91	3.00
Privates	6.41	6.35	6.59	5.47	6.78	6.38	7.00
Total	13.14	13.84	13.50	12.11	14.54	14.29	15.00
Leadership Phase							
Situation 1							
March	14.75	14.28	14.99	13.85	13.24	10.60	15.00
Situation 2							
Concealment from air observation	4.32	3.70	4.77	3.53	4.65	2.33	5.00
Situation 3							
Mounted Combat	11.56	11.64	11.79	11.93	11.87	11.45	13.00
Situation 4							
Reconnaissance of Chapman	10.82	10.54	11.65	9.84	10.48	10.66	14.00
Situation 5							
Camp	12.10	11.90	12.50	12.82	12.53	10.14	13.00
Situation 6							
Reconnaissance of Alida	3.86	3.86	4.09	4.44	4.41	4.14	5.00
Situation 7							
Dismounted Combat	8.68	8.84	11.39	13.75	9.80	10.81	15.00
Condition of Animals	4.00	4.25	4.59	4.86	4.30	4.89	5.00
Total	70.09	69.01	75.77	75.02	71.28	65.02	85.00
Grand Total	83.23	82.85	89.27	87.13	85.82	79.31	100.00

Lieutenant DeBardeleben's platoon is composed of the following named enlisted men:

Sgt. Raymond Holmes
Sgt. Alfred A. Soule
Cpl. Trow W. Demmitt
Cpl. Glen A. Schwinger
Cpl. Claude J. Tuttle
Pvt. Samuel A. Clements
Pvt. Blair C. Minthorn
Pvt. Homer L. Janey
Pvt. Velmer V. McClellen
Pvt. Arthur H. McLean
Pvt. Walter Statkus
Pvt. Tony Czyzewski
Pvt. Robert Flinchum
Pvt. Walter C. Wieland

Pvt. Charles H. McClure
Pvt. Raymond D. Witherell
Pvt. Charles W. Cox
Pvt. Clifford J. Meister
Pvt. Bessel Sebastiano
Pvt. Pat R. Riley
Pvt. Floyd H. Hunt
Pvt. William E. Fredericks
Pvt. Robert D. Woodruff
Pvt. Melvin B. Williams
Pvt. James D. Simpson
Pvt. Ambruce J. Van
Pvt. Patrick C. Hanrahan

Let us pause now and look back somewhat into the history and *raison d'être* of this "Leadership Test." There are many, no doubt, who are asking: "Just what is this test? Who began it? Why does it exist?"



Lieut. Daniel F. J. DeBardeleben, 2d Cavalry
Commander of the winning platoon.

Several years ago, a cavalry officer of the Reserve came to Fort Riley and attended the Reserve Class at the Cavalry School. This officer had perhaps always been a good cavalryman, but it is certain that he left Fort Riley strongly imbued with the teachings of the school and enthusiastic as to the

possibilities that have been opened for the use of cavalry as a result of the World War. Subsequently, he conceived the idea of a competitive test in "The Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units." The January, 1924 issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL announced a prize essay contest to determine the best plan for carrying out this idea.

Fourteen essays were received. The judges were of the opinion that none was in itself complete, yet many contained excellent suggestions which later served as a basis for the plan actually decided upon.

In the fall of 1924, boards were convened at The Cavalry School, and a test was prepared as had been desired. In the spring of 1925, this test was successfully conducted within the 2nd Cavalry. The prize of \$1000.00, donated by the sponsor of the idea, was won by the platoon from Troop F, 2nd Cavalry, Lieutenant J. W. Wofford, commanding.

This year a similar prize was offered, and the Chief of Cavalry directed that the event again be staged at Fort Riley. Boards were convened, and the details arranged of a contest that was essentially similar to that of 1924, but which benefitted appreciably from the experiences of the previous year.

The object of the test, as announced, was to encourage and test the training, courage, and physical development of men and mounts and the combat efficiency of the units. The test was divided into two phases: the first, an individual test for both officers and men; the second, a test of the unit as a whole. Only rifle troops of the 2nd Cavalry were eligible to compete. These were permitted to enter one platoon each, consisting of two rifle squads, one machine rifle squad, and platoon headquarters. The winner was to be that platoon scoring the highest number of points in both phases combined. Prizes were plate for the officer and checks for the enlisted men as follows: each sergeant, \$47.50; each corporal, \$40.00; each private, \$30.00.

The Individual Phase

The Individual Phase, which was given a value of 15% of the whole, was begun on October 7th and completed the following day. For officers, it consisted of a cross country ride of about five miles over a flagged course. The going was rather rough, through Magazine, Coyote, and Forsythe Canyons. There were fourteen prepared obstacles and many natural ones, among which were included Magazine Canyon and 22nd Battery Hill Slides. Interspaced along the route in unexpected groups, were seven pistol targets and six saber heads, which contestants were expected to attack at the gallop. At the completion of the ride, there was a flagged dismounted course of two miles that had to be run in a maximum time of twenty-four minutes. The route selected was across country, over very difficult terrain. Its finish marked the end of the Individual Phase for officers.

For enlisted men, the conditions were different. As a preliminary qualification, all entries were required to measure up to the standards of physical development prescribed in Paragraph 6a of Cavalry Memorandum

No. 3. They then demonstrated their proficiency in the use of pistol and saber by galloping over a prepared course in squad groups and attacking pistol targets and saber heads as they were encountered. Their proficiency in cross country riding was tested by passing each man individually over the mounted course that had been arranged for officers. A greater time allowance was given.

All scores were on the basis of 100. Of the 15% allotted for the Individual Phase, 5% was for officers, 3% for non-commissioned officers, and 7% for privates. The standard prescribed for officers was as follows: (1) mounted course to be completed in thirty minutes; (2) four hits out of a possible seven to be made with the pistol; (3) three penetrations out of a possible six to be made with the saber; (4) all obstacles on the mounted course to be negotiated; (5) the dismounted course to be completed in not to exceed twenty-four minutes. For each element in which the standard was not attained, a penalty of twenty points in a possible one hundred was imposed.

The standard for enlisted men was: (1) one hit in a possible three on pistol targets—value fifteen; (2) the saber head penetrated—value fifteen; (3) the mounted cross country course to be completed in thirty-five minutes—value thirty; (4) all obstacles on the mounted course to be negotiated—value forty. Failure in any requirement resulted in a penalty corresponding to the assigned value.

The Individual Phase was creditably completed by the two hundred officers and men of the 2nd Cavalry. The results were as noted in the tabulated score sheet previously shown. The conditions are thought to have been fair and sufficiently difficult to indicate the differences that existed in the units concerned. The Committee is of the opinion that no basic changes are necessary in future tests of a like nature.

The Leadership Phase

The Leadership Phase, with a value of 85%, was planned in such a way that the platoon would travel upon the circumference of a figure somewhat elliptical in shape. Along this route were seven control points through which the competing units would be required to pass, and at which were special umpires, each of whom was charged with preparing and staging a certain special situation. As the platoons passed, these special umpires scored each on its ability to cope with the situation presented, as shown by the actions and orders of the platoon leader and the men under his command. Accompanying each platoon was a platoon umpire, a different one each day, whose mission, though unknown to the competitors, was purely one of co-ordination. For the convenience of umpires and the Committee in following the problem, the long axis of this elliptical figure was placed coincident with the one paved highway passing through Fort Riley. The platoons carried full field equipment, including ammunition. In general, the enemy was actually represented, though in some cases flags and targets were employed to indicate units of certain strengths. Though directed to pass through all control points shown

THE 1926 CAVALRY LEADERSHIP TEST FOR SMALL UNITS 81

on the maps furnished them, platoons were given perfect liberty of action and unhampered freedom in choice of route between these points. From the receipt of warning orders to the end of the test, they were compelled to consider the situation exactly as represented. Leaders and men were judged entirely by their actions and orders. In no case was an officer or soldier permitted to say: "I would do so and so." The rule was: "Do it." And a good rule it proved to be.

The scoring system adopted, including that for the Individual Phase, is shown below in abbreviated form. For each situation, this table was appreciably amplified by providing each special umpire with an expressly prepared detailed score sheet, which he was not permitted to alter without the approval of the Committee.

The Scoring System		Value
<i>Situation</i>		
<i>Individual Phase</i>		
Lieutenants	5	
Enlisted men	10	
	15	15
<i>C. P. 1. Marching.</i>		
March discipline	2	
March conduct	2	
Care of animals	1	
Equipment	1	
Security	5	
Reconnaissance	2	
Orders	2	
	15	15
<i>C. P. 2. Concealment from air observation</i>		
Dispositions taken	5	
	5	5
<i>C. P. 3. Mounted combat</i>		
Orders	3	
Tactics	10	
	13	13
<i>C. P. 4. Reconnaissance of Chapman</i>		
Reconnaissance	6	
Security	3	
Decision	3	
Dissemination of information	2	
	14	14
<i>C. P. 5. Camping</i>		
Selection of camp site	1	
Going into camp	2	
Security	4	
Breaking camp	3	
Concealment from air observation	2	
General	1	
	13	13

C. P. 6. Reconnaissance of Alida

Reconnaissance of town	2
River crossing:	
Decision to cross	1.5
Manner of crossing	1.5

5.0	5
-----	---

C. P. 7. Dismounted combat

Fire effect	6
Conduct of platoon	9

15	15
----	----

Condition of animals

Condition at finish	5
---------------------	---

5	5
---	---

Final Total Score

100

The Leadership Phase began on October 9th and ended on October 15th. One platoon marched each day, camped about forty miles away that night, and returned over a distance of thirty miles the following day.

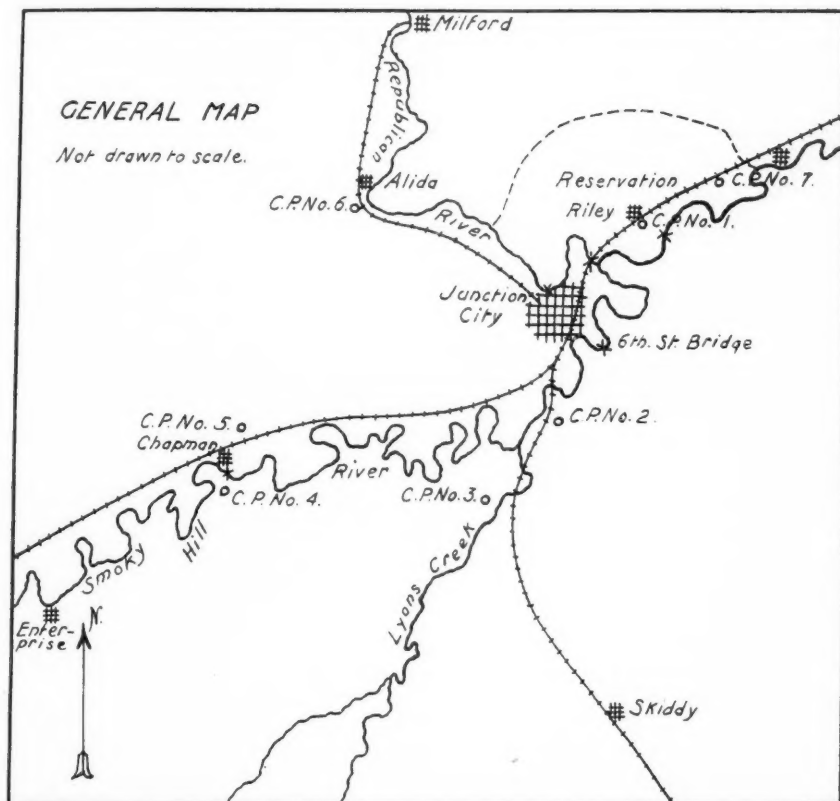
Tactical Situation

The tactical situation assumed was that of two hostile armies facing each other along an east and west line through Topeka, Kansas. Their western flanks were covered by cavalry operating principally between Manhattan and Junction City. The Blue command, on the south, directed a reconnaissance around the enemy right to determine the truth of airplane reports of a projected hostile envelopment. This reconnaissance was performed by the platoons competing in this test. They were directed to reconnoiter the Lyons Creek Valley, Chapman, and Alida—all enemy territory. Identifications were ordered. Maps were furnished showing the area to be investigated, and on which were marked the control points.

At 5:00 p. m., each day, beginning with October 8th, one of the platoon leaders was summoned by the platoon umpire assigned him. He was given the general and special situations and a warning order to the effect that he would go on reconnaissance the following morning at 6:20 a. m.; that he would be away at least two days; that complete maps and orders would be given at his picket line one half hour before the time of departure. The following morning they were joined by the special umpire for marching, and the platoon leader was given all necessary maps and orders.

The special umpire remained with the platoon as far as Control Point No. 2, a distance of about 16 miles. He was present during the estimate of the situation, map reconnaissance, issuance of orders, and initiation of the march. He graded the platoon especially on those points listed on the score sheet previously shown.

An interesting feature of this march was the hostile situation and the road net. Junction City was known to be strongly garrisoned by the enemy. Consequently, it was logical to assume that its approaches would be under fire. A map was given the special umpire with the outer limits of this enemy beaten zone accurately plotted. Should a platoon enter this zone, he pronounced it



under fire. Should it persist in its advance, he penalized the leader on his decision and ruled casualties, which later automatically affected the result of the dismounted fire problem. Since the shortest route to Control Point No. 2 lay through the outskirts of Junction City, platoon leaders who had failed to make a careful estimate of the situation invariably took this road, with resultant calamity. Three of the six came under enemy fire and were repulsed. One persisted so strongly that he received fire three times, was given the maximum number of casualties, and marched six miles more than was

necessary in reaching his first objective.

Platoon leaders in general seemed to understand the system of marching by bounds, but it was insufficiently practiced. In several cases, many miles of marching were saved by a careful study of the map prior to leaving the stables. In one or two instances, platoon leaders showed lack of ability in map reading. They were poorly oriented as to both roads and terrain and were saved either by good fortune or through the efforts of their non-commissioned officers. The rate of march was so retarded by making the necessary reconnaissances that few platoons completed the first forty miles in less than ten hours, halts included.

Soon after Control Point No. 2 was passed, an enemy airplane appeared in the distance, flying at 2,000 feet and reconnoitering the area through which the platoon was moving. Platoons were judged entirely from their actions as seen from the ground. For the purposes of the problem, discovery by the air observer was considered of little importance as the terrain varied in each case. In some instances, there was cover; in others, there was none.

The dispositions taken by platoons were generally good, though often squads were too bunched. In several instances, observers were unable to differentiate between enemy and friendly planes, and there was one case in which the plane approached with no warning given. In some cases, platoons were immobilized more than was necessary by the presence of an enemy ship in the air.

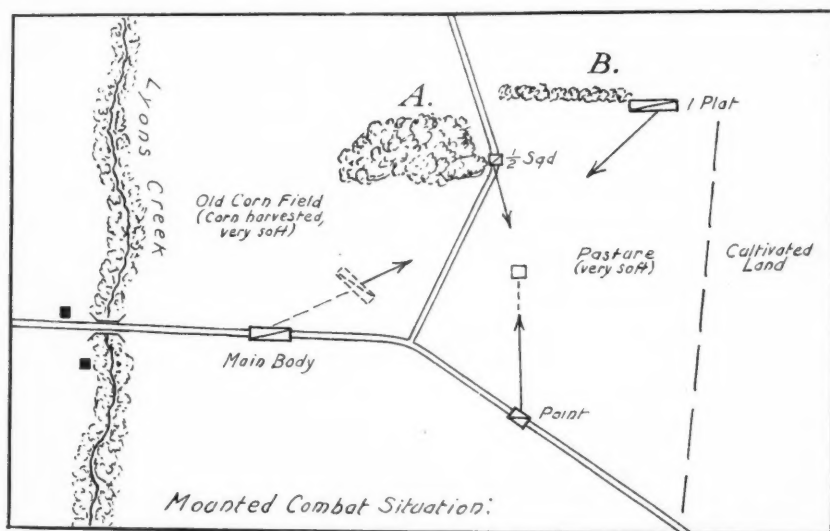
It is of especial interest to note that, though enemy planes appeared at times when practically no cover was available, yet almost without exception, the cavalry platoons were able to avoid discovery by following the instructions laid down in our regulations governing the conduct of commands under such situations.

Mounted Combat Situation

The mounted combat situation was presented a few miles beyond Control Point No. 3. As the advance element of each platoon arrived at the point indicated in the sketch shown in Plate 2, an enemy platoon, represented by flags carried by mounted men, delivered an attack from Woods A and B. Umpires rode with the Blue point and with the platoon leader and described the situation as it developed, and as it could be seen. For example, as the first enemy group appeared, the umpire with the point would state: "There is an enemy half squad breaking out of those trees." That was all. The enemy advanced, and the point leader was left to his own devices. The umpire with the platoon leader gave no information whatever until the latter had advanced sufficiently to actually see for himself. He then gave his information in a manner similar to that just described. This system worked well in all situations. It resulted in *action* on the part of the platoon.

The attacks were well carried out. Without exception, platoons appreciated the import of their missions and promptly attacked mounted. Point leaders generally showed their initiative by charging without orders, though in one case confusion was caused in a platoon by the retreat of this element. The enemy advance group having been dispersed, points usually moved to a flank and joined in the attack of the main body. One corporal, well imbued with the spirit of the offensive, continued his attack against the enemy main body.

All attacks were made mounted, but two platoon leaders directed their machine rifles to support the action from positions on the road. Though the idea of combined action is good, this attack was so hastily prepared that there was extreme danger in permitting any element to dismount. The



mobility of the machine rifle squads should have been retained.

The greater number of platoon commanders demonstrated that they had not forgotten their missions, by demanding identifications immediately upon completion of the combat.

At Chapman, the feature of primary importance was the reconnaissance of the town, though the situation included a river crossing, capture and disposal of prisoners, transmission of information, and a problem in decision and security. Several umpires were employed here in order that one might be available for accompanying each separate element into which the platoons might be divided. Enlisted men were used to represent enemy stragglers.

Chapman was assumed to have been abandoned by the enemy only eight hours before the arrival of the Blue patrols. As the platoons approached the bridge over the Smoky Hill River on the road leading into town from the south, they were fired on by mounted stragglers from the opposite side of the river. As a rule, the Blue points very properly attacked, mounted at once and captured these enemy soldiers. Their platoons followed closely and the town was secured. In two cases, however, where the attacks were made dismounted, much time was lost, and the enemy stragglers escaped.

After the capture of the town and posting suitable march outposts, the railway station, telegraph, telephone, and post offices and all other places which might give information were investigated. Additional prisoners were seized at the railway telegraph office. These, together with the two previously taken, all gave valuable information when questioned concerning their units. This, of course, they had been carefully coached in. The platoon leaders now had the double problem of disposing of prisoners and disseminating the information obtained. This was generally done by impressing automobiles and sending both back over the route that had been followed that morning. Unsuccessful attempts were also made to employ both telegraph and telephone.

Camp

Soon after leaving Chapman, a new special umpire joined and informed the platoon that a camp for the night might be made. He remained at this camp during the night and graded the platoon as indicated on the score sheet under his phase. One hour before dawn, he woke the platoon leader and gave him information which caused his immediate departure.

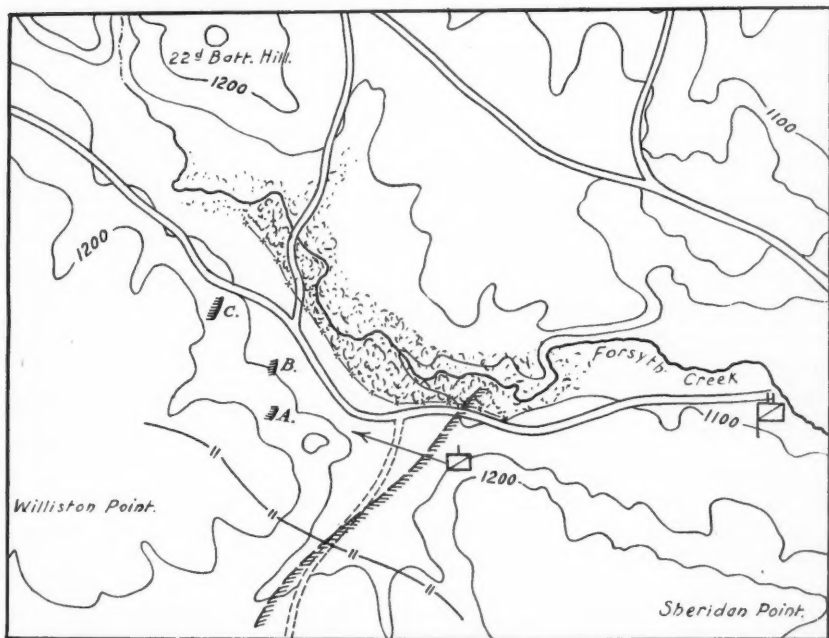
All camp sites were well selected and in no cases were discovered by the airplanes sent to reconnoiter for them. The platoons usually bivouacked, as was considered advisable. Security measures were good, though in two cases, too large a percentage of men was kept awake on this duty. In one or two instances, insufficient attention was given to a good defensive system within the platoon camp itself. With one or two exceptions, there was no confusion in breaking camp, though the failure of several contestants to feed and water was evidenced in the condition of their animals at the finish.

At Alida, other umpires were met, the town reconnoitered, and information gained which led the patrols to return to Fort Riley by way of the bridges at Junction City. A river crossing by swimming had been intended, but the flooded condition of streams at the time of the contest prevented this.

Dismounted Phase

At Control Point No. 7, four special umpires were met who were to conduct the platoons through the dismounted phase. The situation was simple. As part of a general offensive, a squadron dismounted attack was to be made up Forsythe Canyon (on the Fort Riley reservation). The platoons received orders at Squadron Headquarters and more detailed instructions at

Troop Headquarters. They dismounted, led horses were placed under cover in the rear, and the men conducted to positions just in rear of the line of departure (outpost line). Here platoon leaders were shown their objectives, boundary lines designated, and five minutes allowed for preparing platoons before zero hour. Scouts had barely gained positions to the front, and platoons begun to advance, when they were fired on from enemy Position A. Here, many made their mistake. They dropped in place, opened fire, and began an advance in the direction of the enemy by squad or half squad rushes directly across open, level terrain. Not more than two made any real attempt to utilize the cover afforded.



The situation was ideal for maneuver. There was a small hill on the platoon left front which could be reached by a covered approach, and which was only 200 yards from the enemy position. Along the right platoon boundary, the ground was rolling and slightly wooded. The action, as clearly indicated, was for the left squad to work to the left front under cover of the hill, and there take up a firing position; the right squad to advance by infiltration along the right boundary line after the left squad had opened fire. Thus, a position directly on the enemy flank could have been gained, and he

would have been forced to retire at little cost of life to the attackers. Yet so few realized this. Platoon after platoon, with no thought of maneuver or infiltration or making use of cover afforded by the ground, engaged in the out-of-date, parade ground rushes. This phase brought forth the one weak spot in the training of the six platoons.

The problem was terminated by an examination of mounts upon arrival at the stables. The veterinarian based his scores primarily on the number of sore backs, cinch sores, cases of lameness, and fatigue. The fact that 80% was the lowest score given in this phase is indicative of the effective march training of the regiment.

There were two changes in the test this year that definitely affected the final outcome. The first was in the Individual Phase. Previously, this was only a qualification phase with no value assigned. Enlisted men did not compete. Officers were either qualified or not. Those who failed to qualify were deprived of their platoons and substitute commanders designated. This resulted in several units being led by officers strange to the men, failed to take into account the individual training and physical fitness of the soldier, and placed certain platoons at a great disadvantage.

This year, both officers and men were required to participate in a severe individual test. The groups of individual scores were given a value of 15% of the whole, and final results accordingly affected.

A second change was in the umpire system. Formerly, the umpire who marched with each platoon gave his platoon a certain definite score on its march conduct. This time, however, the general rule was: "Each umpire who assigns a score will judge every platoon in the same phase." Thus, though platoon umpires were retained, they acted merely in the capacity of agents of the Committee for assuring the smooth running of the contest.

Recommendations

As a result of the experiences of the past two years, there are several matters in connection with the staging of a contest of this kind which are thought worthy of mention.

(1) The Individual Phase can be improved by scoring the refusals experienced by contestants at each obstacle. This year, there was a difference of eleven refusals between two different platoons in passing over the mounted course. One was evidently better than the other and should have received credit for this.

(2) The advisability of having the same umpire judge all the contesting units in a given situation was demonstrated.

(3) A co-ordinating umpire to accompany each unit throughout the problem was of great assistance to the Committee charged with staging the test. They should take no part in the scoring.

(4) Platoon leaders should not know definitely what situations will be presented, in what order the situations will occur, what umpires will be

charged with scoring, and what the method of scoring will be. This plan serves to keep the unit commander and his men alert at all times, as they are unaware of how or when they will be scored.

(5) Special umpires should be given score sheets prepared in detail in advance.

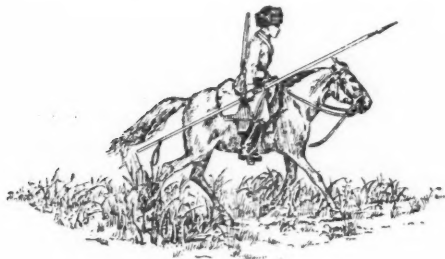
(6) Special umpires must be given latitude in presenting or staging their situations. They must have imagination in order that this may be well done.

(7) The number of umpires allowed for each situation is regulated so that there will be one to accompany the unit leader, and one for each of the elements which it is estimated might be detached.

(8) Competing elements must be required to act. Umpires intervene only to insure the smooth progress of the problem.

As conducted this year, the contest is believed to be satisfactory in all major details. Another time, the terrain and situations should both be varied. The framework is sound. The officer who originated the idea and provided the means for encouraging its execution has done our branch a great service. He has shown the way. It is towards this idea that our training methods and tests should trend.

The Cavalry School teaches that the training of cavalry should be, as far as facilities permit, along the lines described in this article, and that, in order to accustom troops to meet the situations that arise in war, this training should be habitual, not exceptional.



The Cavalry's Cavalry

A study of armored cars, their powers and limitations, and some notes as to their tactical employment.

By

Major PAUL R. DAVISON, Cavalry

Instructor in Tactics, The Cavalry School

THE armored car, in so far as our army is concerned, is in the formative stage. Our experience in the use of these auxiliaries is so limited as to be of practically no value in determining their proper tactical use. It is necessary to draw upon the experience of our allies during the World War in order to arrive at sound tactical principles to be applied in future conflicts to the use of these valuable and formidable engines of warfare.

A three cornered combination, composed of air corps, armored cars, and cavalry, can be of untold value to a commander in any situation that has not degenerated into the shambles of trench warfare, such as occurred in western Europe during the late unpleasantness.

As every self-propelled, wheeled vehicle is a potential armored car, it will be seen that armored cars will grade from open Ford touring cars with machine guns, mounts and crews aboard, to the expensive, highly developed armored cars built as such. Armored cars grade gradually into the tanks which become the armored cars of trench warfare.

A car of the type of the reconnaissance car, being experimented with by the Ordnance Department and consisting of a Ford chassis, bucket seats, equipped with large wheels and tires, could be quickly converted into an armored car by having the local blacksmith add a steel shield or two and mount a machine gun. This vehicle is able to negotiate all roads, and to travel to a considerable extent across country, in any locality to be found on this continent. There will be times when rains will hold up its operations for a short length of time, but a light car of this kind will be able to get about soon after the wetting, and long before heavier cars can move. The rolling fortresses of from six to ten tons weight, can only operate over concrete or heavily metalled roads, or in dry weather, over such roads as our ordinary supply trucks will use. Because of the road limitations, armored car organizations should be made up of different types and weights of cars within the unit, to enable them to be prepared to meet all emergencies.

Armored cars have no independent role. They habitually work in conjunction with one of the basic arms, cavalry or infantry. The tactics of the armored car units, or the manner in which they engage an enemy, is no different from that of any other combat unit. They employ the most basic tactics of all combat. Two small boys, absolutely ignorant of tactics and, as a matter of fact, without prearranged formations or agreement, when annoyed by a larger boy, will deploy themselves so that one boy delivers a frontal or

holding attack, while the other maneuvers to a flank or rear and there attacks the larger boy with a weapon, or tackles him. The same principles apply to squads, regiments, divisions, corps, and armies. Armored cars attempt to bring cross fire on to their enemy. They engage him in front and if possible, maneuver a part of the unit so as to bring fire upon his flank or rear. As their role is more often offensive than defensive, the armored cars are best used on a flank or with a maneuvering force.



An Armored Fighting Car

Heavy French type. Limited to paved or very hard and dry dirt roads. Practically useless across country.

In the early stages of operations, before the main forces come in contact, the armored cars are best employed on reconnaissance. Here we find the value of the triumvirate before mentioned. The air corps will report the location of the enemy mass of troops, point out the roads he is using, and the direction in which he is moving. Armored cars are despatched in the given direction to locate the smaller, more advanced elements of the enemy, and to obtain negative information. When the enemy is encountered, his weak advanced elements may be driven back, and by means of encircling movements, the rough extent of his front is determined. The cavalry follows behind the armored cars at its most effective rate of march, for the purpose of furthering the reconnaissance of the armored cars, or for combat, as the situation may require. Based on the information obtained by the armored cars, the cavalry can plan its operations with an understanding of the situation and with the

minimum expenditure of horses and men. As the forces close with each other, the cars move to the flank with the cavalry and operate with security detachments or against the enemy flank and rear.

From a study of the above it will be seen that the armored cars bear a relation to the cavalry similar to the relation that the cavalry bears to the infantry. The armored cars become the cavalry of the cavalry.

The basic organization of the armored cars will of necessity be the squad. The squad will consist of one car and its crew. The basic tactical unit should be the platoon with its quota of motor cycles and tenders. A four car platoon is preferable to a three car platoon for the same reasons that all four unit organizations are more flexible than those composed of three.

Armored cars should not be divided into units smaller than a platoon when they are given missions that require them to move beyond the support of the cavalry. For local reconnaissance, single cars may be used, but when they are sent forth on distant missions, the platoon should be the smallest independent unit. History shows that single cars have been used on distant missions, and in the majority of cases they have broken down mechanically, bogged, or have been captured. Some accomplished their missions after a fashion. Most of those that did return, accomplished nothing. In almost every case the mission would have been a complete success had a platoon been assigned to the duty. The cars rely upon mutual assistance, as their vision is very limited and they are difficult to conceal. By mutual fire support they are able to progress farther and consequently secure greater and more accurate information.

Armored cars should be given distinct missions of a limited nature. They should habitually move and be moved, by bounds within zones, prescribed in advance by the commander of the force to which they are attached. They should never be given roving commissions in the front or on the flank of the cavalry or infantry. Their position should be known to the commander of the cavalry at all times so that he may recall them in order to despatch them on other missions as emergencies arise.

When armored cars attack, they do so by direct, surprise fire from concealed points that offer good observation. They strive to enfilade the enemy and bring to bear on him the cross fire of two or more cars. The cars are always halted when firing weapons of larger caliber than machine guns. Machine guns are fired at the halt whenever possible, as running fire is so inaccurate that it can only be used in emergencies.

Reconnaissance

One of the most valuable functions of armored cars is that of reconnaissance. Strategical reconnaissance has already been discussed. There will be many times when, due to fog, rain and other causes, the air corps will not be able to obtain the desired information. The cars can obtain information as to whether towns, woods and other localities are occupied by the enemy. The

cars will usually operate directly from the headquarters of the whole force and will make their reports to that headquarters. They will, unless otherwise ordered, give such information as they have been able to secure, to their own troops as they pass through them on the return trip.

When distant reconnaissance detachments are sent out, there should be a platoon or more of armored cars attached to the detachment. When staff officers are sent out with the armored cars, it is advisable that they make the trip in their own motor cars, until contact is gained, and then seek shelter within the armored cars. Staff officers will be able to see more of the terrain, will not crowd the passenger capacity of the armored cars, and will be able to return to their headquarters with greater speed in this way. When the cars arrive at a distant point, reconnaissance off the roads can be carried much farther if there are horses available. In enemy country, saddle horses may be commandeered, and in friendly country, saddle horses may be borrowed or requisitioned. In India the British intend to carry a saddled horse in a trailer.



A British Car

British Rolls-Royce fighting car on reconnaissance in Mesopotamia. This car can maneuver to a considerable extent across country.

It is problematical how this will work out. In searching a town or woods to determine if it is occupied, the usual method is to send one car rapidly into the town, one car to each flank of the town, and hold one car back to cover the assembly.

With Advance Guards

Armored cars attached to a cavalry advance guard will satisfactorily perform front and flank reconnaissance that is too distant for mounted or dismounted patrols. A great saving of time and horse flesh will be the result.

The cars can investigate woods and villages and hold important terrain features until the cavalry arrives. They assist the infantry in the same manner. When attached to advance guards, the cars march in the interval between the main body and the advance guard so that they will not be required to take the same rate of march as the cavalry or infantry. They move within this interval by bounds.

In Pursuit

Pursuing cavalry will find armored cars extremely useful, especially in the parallel and strategical pursuit. In this type of action, all forces can act more boldly and with more abandon, than in any other. The cars may be sent on wide detours to the enemy flank and rear to find points where the enemy can be harassed or his progress impeded by destroying bridges or holding defiles.

Delaying Action

The cars, operating in conjunction with cavalry or infantry, may operate in front of, or on the flanks of the advancing enemy. They may withdraw by bounds, delaying by fire from good observation points, or they may act aggressively against the enemy's flanks.

Raids

Raiding cavalry can use armored cars to deliver fire on, or to block avenues of approach leading to, the objective of the raid. They are a valuable means of maintaining liaison between the raiding force and the main body from which the raiding force was sent.

Outpost and Counter Reconnaissance

The cars, when assigned to forces performing these missions, are best used to block avenues of approach and as distant standing patrols.

Protection of and Against Armored Cars

Armored cars are practically proof against .30 caliber rifle and machine gun fire. They fear, and are good targets for, the .50 caliber machine guns, one pounders (37 mm. cannon), anti-tank guns, and artillery. Their protection is in their ability to quickly seek concealment when fired upon by the above mentioned weapons. Troops armed with the ordinary shoulder rifle and machine gun cannot stop armored cars. The troops can place oil on concrete, and water on dirt, road turns, to cause the cars to skid into the ditch. The troops should strive to entice the cars into a trap and by barricading in front of and behind the cars, hold them there until troops arrive that have weapons capable of handling the situation or until sheer force of numbers force the cars to surrender.

At Night

Armored cars are of little value at night except for outpost work. They are constantly in need of minor repairs and overhauling, due to the arduous duties they perform. They are usually called in at night, behind the cavalry, where they meet their supply and maintenance sections and are subjected to thorough inspections. Minor repairing, restocking and refilling, if done every twenty-four hours, will add greatly to the longevity and usefulness of the cars.

Supply

It is needless to say that armored cars need gas, oil, and water above all things. In order to get these necessities to the cars, their supply vehicles should be of two types: heavy cargo carrying trucks that travel with the division service trains, and light delivery type trucks that operate between the heavies and the forward car parks. Call the light trucks the combat train, if desired, and let it accompany the fighting cars as far forward as safety will permit.

Orders

The orders issued by a commander to the armored car commander, differ in no way from orders issued to any other combat unit, except that when they are in writing, they should contain no mention of the plans or mission of our own troops. Armored cars are much like reconnaissance detachments in that they are liable to fall into the hands of the enemy, and should the orders carried by them contain information of our own forces, their capture would be of great assistance to the enemy's intelligence sections.

Training

Armored car personnel must be trained in the handling and minor repairing of their motor cars. It is not difficult to find this type of personnel in a country like ours where the motor car is so extensively used. The first military requisite of armored car personnel is a trained eye for the ground. It is essential for the leaders, and necessary even down to the privates, that they be able to tell at a glance the condition of the roads and the ground on either side of the road, and know whether or not it will carry the load of the cars. The weather, color and nature of the soil, and a study of grades and ditches will tell the car personnel whether they can with safety use roads or terrain for maneuver. The car personnel must all be highly trained in scouting, observation, and intelligence duties.

Armored cars are a new and valuable adjunct to a fighting force and no officer who aspires to higher command or would win battles in future wars, can consider his military education complete unless he has a thorough knowledge of their powers and limitations and the principles of their tactical employment.

The 1926 Endurance Ride

By

Captain JOHN A. WEEKS, Third Cavalry

THE eighth annual Endurance Ride, sponsored by the American Remount Association, Arabian Horse Club of America, Horse Association of America, Kentucky Jockey Club, Thoroughbred Horse Association, Morgan Horse Club, and the United States Cavalry Association, was held October 11-16, 1926, at Brandon, Vermont.

The officials of the Ride were: Mr. Wayne Dinsmore, Secretary and Treasurer, Chicago, Illinois; Mr. Lenox D. Barnes, Recorder, Fitzwilliam, New Hampshire; Dr. L. H. Adams, Veterinarian, Montpelier, Vermont; Dr. Herman Philipsen, Assistant Veterinarian, Brandon, Vermont; Major C. A. Benton, Route Master, New York, New York; Mr. E. H. Moore, Assistant Route Master, Brandon, Vermont; Mr. F. E. Backus, Weigher, Brandon, Vermont.

The judges were: Mr. Allan Case, Toronto, Canada; Dr. W. W. Townsend, Burlington, Vermont; Judge A. F. H. Seeger, of the New York Supreme Court.

While seventeen horses were entered for the ride, two were scratched and one was eliminated on account of lameness, when they appeared for the preliminary examination on Sunday, October 10th.

Fourteen horses passed the preliminary examination. They were as follows:

Moccasin. Roan Gelding; grade Thoroughbred; 9 years; height 15-3; weight 1030; sire, *Hermitage*; owner, Captain H. R. Springer, Q. M. C.; rider, 1st Lieut., C. R. Chase. *Stockings*. Bay Gelding; grade Thoroughbred; 11 years; height, 15-1; weight, 1075; sire, *Apron Face*; owner, 1st Squadron, 3rd U. S. Cavalry; rider, Sergeant Stanley Blazejeski.

Bunny Boy. Bay Gelding; grade Thoroughbred; 8 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 1005; sire, *Kind Sir*; owner, 1st Squadron, 3rd U. S. Cavalry; rider Corporal John Nickerson.

Blue Bell. Chestnut Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 9 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 1055; sire, *Belfrey*; owner, U. S. Remount Service; rider, Sergeant John C. Currie.

Mark Hal. Bay Gelding; Standard Bred; 5 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 1090; sire, *Empire Hal*; Dam, *Hallie Brown*; owner, R. T. M. McCready; rider, James McCready.

Rex Rysdyk. Golden Dun Gelding; American Saddle Bred; 8 years; height, 15-3¾; weight, 925; sire, *Rex Morne*; Dam, *Marigold*; owner, R. T. M. McCready; rider R. T. M. McCready.

Peggy. Bay Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 13 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 1010; sire, *Ganadore*; owner, Troop F, 3rd U. S. Cavalry; rider, Sergeant Anthony Quatickesy.

Rusty. Buckskin Gelding; Morgan; 13 years; weight, 785; Sire, *Hind's Ethan Allen*; owner, Dr. H. L. Frost; rider, Dr. H. L. Frost.

Babe. Bay Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 10 years; height, 15-2¾; weight, 930; sire, *District Attorney*; owner, Headquarters Detachment, 2nd Squadron, 3rd Cavalry; rider, 1st Lieut. G. B. Hudson.

Miss Brandon. Bay Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 8 years; height, 15-1½; weight, 930; sire, *Cock of the Walk*; owner, Service Troop, 3rd U. S. Cavalry; rider, Corporal S. J. Matheson.

Lady Luck. Brown Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 10 years; height, 16-½; weight, 1110; sire, *Foot Print*; owner, Service Troop, 3rd U. S. Cavalry; rider, Sergeant A. E. Rathburn.

Lillian Russell. Chestnut Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 12 years; height, 15-3¼; weight, 1080; bred by British Remount Service; owner, Captain John A. Weeks, 3rd Cavalry; rider, Captain John A. Weeks.

Dolly. Bay Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 7 years; height, 15-3; weight, 1100; sire, *Wilton Lackey*; owner, 16th Field Artillery; rider, Sergeant Anthony Yanonski.

Donwell. Bay Gelding; Morgan; 10 years; height, 15-2; weight, 1020; sire, *Castor*; owner, Captain John C. McDonald; rider, 1st Lieut., Francis P. Tomkins.

In this list of entries it is noted that all but three are from the U. S. Army.

On Sunday, October 10th, the preliminary judging took place. All entries were given a thorough examination by the Judges and Veterinarian. They were weighed, measured and all blemishes and minor defects noted and recorded. *Major S.*, a Morgan, which had participated in the 1925 Endurance



Miss Brandon, Winner of the Ride

Ride was found to be lame and was eliminated. The remainder of the entries were then shown under the saddle at the walk, trot, canter, and extended gallop, when any peculiarities of gaits or manner of traveling were noted.

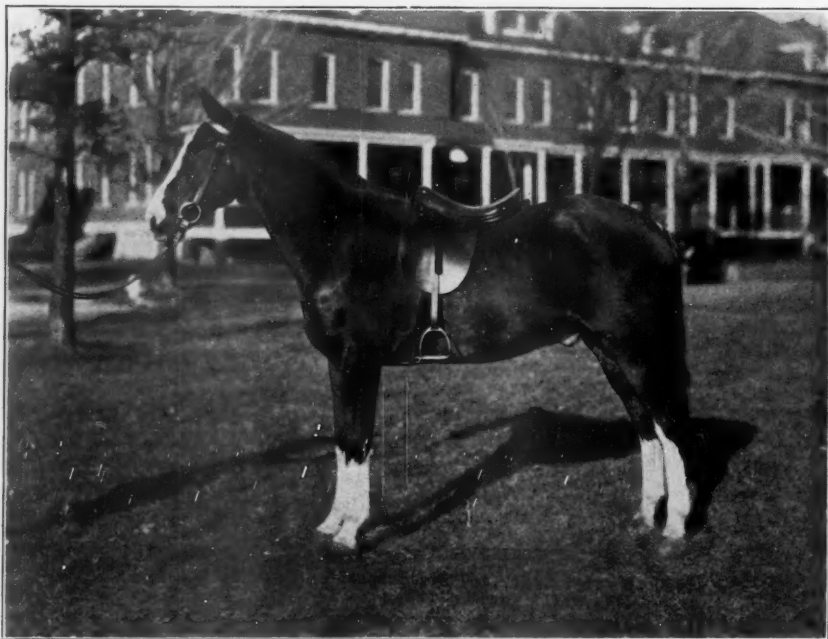
The course covered a distance of 300 miles to be made in five days, an average of 60 miles per day. Each horse carried 225 pounds weight. Nine hours was allotted for completion of each day's ride in perfect time. A penalty of one point was imposed for each 7½ minutes that a contestant was late. The maximum time limit was 11 hours. Each day's course was over a different route. The start each day began in Brandon and after following a circuitous route terminated at the same point. Control stations were established approximately every fifteen miles. At each such station every contesting

horse was stopped long enough for his physical condition to be determined by the Judges.

First Day

The five days ride began Monday morning, the 11th. Fourteen horses and riders left their stables between 7:15 and 7:45 A. M. Lieutenant Tomkins on *Donwell* started promptly at 7:15, followed at intervals by the others. Sergeant Quatickesy on *Peggy* checked out at 7:45 and brought up the rear of the procession.

The route led over a hilly section past Lake Dunmore, through East Middlebury and via New Haven Mills to the Morgan Horse Farm a distance of 35.5 miles where the noon day halt of approximately fifteen minutes was



Stockings, Awarded Second Place

made. The return to Brandon was made by way of Middlebury and Leicester Junction. All entries finished on time. *Lady Luck* developed colic and was not started the following morning.

Second Day

Tuesday, the route was much up and down hill and passed through Chittenden and by way of Meadow Lake to Rutland where the noon halt was made at the Rutland Country Club. The return trip was made via Florence

to Brandon.

Moccasin showed evidence of great weakness in the afternoon and Lieutenant Chase withdrew him from the ride about the 38 mile post. Shortly after this *Rusty* fell with his rider, Dr. Frost, and started down the road in the opposite direction at a dead run. An automobile was impressed into service to capture him and when he was brought back Dr. Frost, with a fractured ankle from the fall, painfully mounted and brought his mount in on time. Twelve horses finished in minimum time. Several of them were showing the effects of the grind. *Babe* came in apparently in excellent condition. However, in the early evening it was found that she was lame from some unaccountable injury near the off hock.



Rex Rysdyk, Mr. R. T. M. McCready up, Awarded Third Place

Third Day

On Wednesday *Babe* was unable to start. *Mark Hal* showed such signs of fatigue that he was withdrawn by his owner, Mr. McCready. *Donwell* was foundered and did not start. The route followed by the nine horses remaining was through Sudbury and Orwell Village to Shoreham where the noon halt was made. Dr. Frost attempted to continue the ride but the injury received the previous day became so painful that he was forced, after fifteen miles, to turn his mount over to Lieutenant Chase to complete the ride. The return route was made via Cornwall and Salisbury. All horses came in on time

except *Dolly*, which had been ridden a few miles off the course during the morning and came in 20 minutes late.

Fourth Day

Thursday, the day was a real test. There were two mountains with an altitude over 2100 feet to climb. The route was mostly up hill during the morning over Rochester and Bread Loaf mountains. *Dolly* and *Rusty* showed such great evidence of fatigue at the noon halt that they were withdrawn. The return to Brandon was mostly down hill and via Leicester Junction. *Lillian Russell* developed a strained tendon which caused her to favor her off



Peggy, Awarded Fourth Place

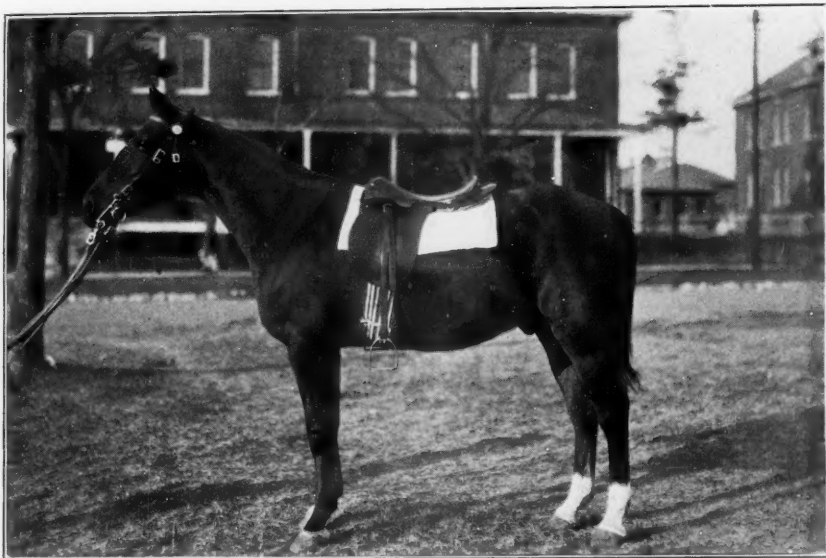
fore when traveling over rough going. *Peggy* fell at about the 56 mile post, caused by loose gravel on a sharp decline on the crest of the road rolling her foot over. She received cuts over the eye, on the point of the shoulder, and knee. The other horses showed marked evidence of the severe strain. All finished on time.

Fifth Day

Friday, the final day of the ride, saw seven horses start on the last 60 miles of the 300 mile test. The route led via Beebe Lake, Hubbardton, Bomo-seen Village, Castleton Corners, Hydeville, and to Mountain View Stock Farm where the noon halt was made. The return trip was made through Orwell

Village, Abels Corners and by Lake Hortonia, and over Breakneck Hill into Brandon.

At the 42 mile post *Blue Bell* showed signs of excessive fatigue and was withdrawn. Six horses finished. They had made the 300 mile journey in the minimum time of 45 hours. All had a perfect score of 40 for time. As there were six prizes to be awarded it was certain that all six entries had placed. As soon as the horses got in they were again weighed but the weight at this



Bunny Boy, Awarded Fifth Place

time was not given out by the judges.

Final Judging

At 7:00 A. M., Saturday, October 15th, the final judging began. The horses individually were led up from the stables on the halter and shown at the walk and trot. Some stepped along very lively while others showed considerable evidence of stiffness. Up to this time no rider, groom or owner had been allowed access to the horses, the feeding and watering having been done by the guard under the supervision of the Judges. The horses were then groomed and later weighed, after which they were shown under the saddle at the walk, trot, canter, and extended gallop.

Dr. Paul Moody, President of Middlebury College, announced the winners and presented the trophies in the Public Square of Brandon.

The awards were as follows:

First, *Miss Brandon*—Speed 40, Condition 59. Total 99.

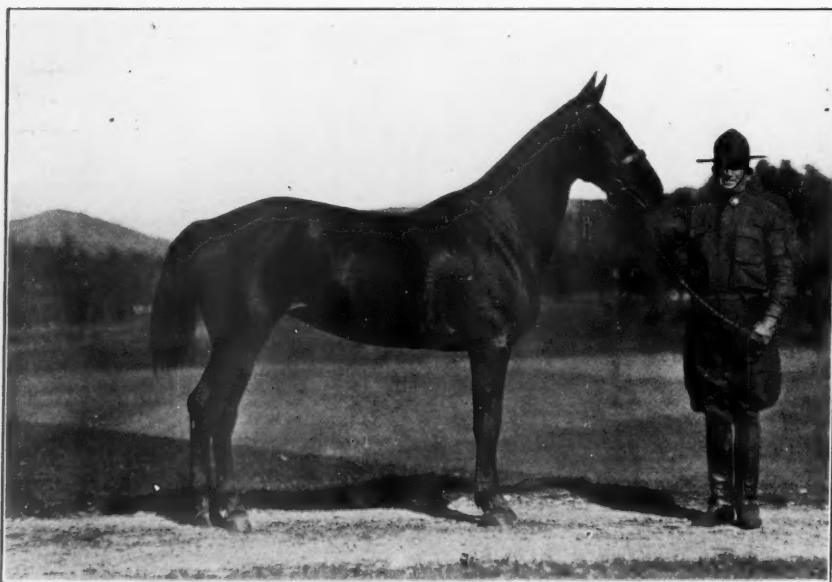
Second, *Stockings*—Speed 40, Condition 55. Total 95.

Third, *Rex Rysdyk*—Speed 40, Condition 53. Total 93.

Fourth, *Peggy*—Speed 40, Condition 51. Total 91.

Fifth, *Bunny Boy*—Speed 40, Condition 44. Total 84.

Sixth, *Lillian Russell*—Speed 40, Condition 40. Total 80.



Lillian Russell, Awarded Sixth Place

The prizes were as follows: First prize \$600.00, the Second Mounted Service Cup, Arabian Horse Club Medal, The Morgan Horse Club Medal, and the Morgan Horse Club Trophy; second prize, \$500.00, and the Morgan Horse Club Trophy; third prize, \$400.00, and The Morgan Horse Club Trophy; fourth prize, \$300.00; fifth prize, \$200.00; sixth prize, \$100.00.

There was a prize of \$100.00 in gold to the rider who showed the best horsemanship during the ride without regard to his position at the finish. This prize was awarded Corporal Samuel J. Matheson, Troop F, 3rd U. S. Cavalry, the rider of *Miss Brandon*. A prize of \$100.00 in gold was given by Mr. and Mrs. R. J. Gladdings of Providence, Rhode Island, for the rider bringing his horse home in the best condition. This prize was also awarded Corporal Matheson.

It may be of interest to note the effect of the ride on the horses as regards weight. The following in sequence is the weight of the horses at the

preliminary judging, at the completion of the ride, and at the final judging.

<i>Miss Brandon</i>	930— 895— 895—total loss, 35 pounds,
<i>Stockings</i>	1075—1010—1020—total loss, 55 pounds,
<i>Rex Rysdyk</i>	925— 890— 890—total loss, 35 pounds,
<i>Peggy</i>	1010— 980— 995—total loss, 15 pounds,
<i>Bunny Boy</i>	1005— 950— 965—total loss, 40 pounds,
<i>Lillian Russell</i>	1080—1050—1060—total loss, 20 pounds,

By *Miss Brandon's* success the Third United States Cavalry becomes the permanent possessor of the Mounted Service Cup, it having been won by *Peggy* in 1924 and 1925.

This was the initial Endurance Ride for *Miss Brandon*, *Stockings* and *Bunny Boy*; the second for *Rex Rysdyk*, he having won 4th place in 1925; and the third for *Lillian Russell*, she having won 3rd place in 1924 and 1925. *Peggy* has the unique distinction of being the only horse to have won the cup twice.

In training horses for the Endurance Ride, a regular schedule of exercise and feed is essential to properly condition the animals.

The schedule which has been used by the 3rd Cavalry team at Fort Myer, Virginia, during the past three years, and which was prepared by Captain Jean R. Underwood, V. C., and to whom most credit is due for the Fort Myer team winning during the last three years, is shown below.

1st and 2nd Week:

- A. M. Monday, Wednesday, Friday. Eight miles at six miles per hour.
Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday. Twelve miles at six miles per hour.
175 pounds up.
- P. M. One hour walk. 15 minutes grazing. Sunday, one hour walk, 15 minutes grazing.

3rd Week:

- A. M. Monday, Wednesday, Friday. Walk one mile. Trot and canter 3 miles (1-3 canter, 2-3 trot), then 6 miles at 6 miles per hour.
175 pounds up.
Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday. 12 miles at 6 miles per hour.
Sunday. One hour walk. 15 minutes grazing.
- P. M. One hour walk. No extra weight.

4th and 5th Week:

- A. M. Monday, Wednesday, Friday. One mile walk, 3 miles trot and canter (1-3 canter, 2-3 trot), then 6 miles at 6 miles per hour.
175 pounds up.
Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday. 15 miles at 6 miles per hour. 190 pounds up.
- P. M. One hour walk. Sunday, one hour walk. No grazing. No extra weight.

6th Week:

A. M. Monday, Wednesday, Friday. Walk one mile, trot and canter 3 miles (1-3 canter, 2-3 trot), then 6 miles at 6 miles per hour. 175 pounds up.

Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday. 15 miles at 6 miles per hour. 200 pounds up.

P. M. One hour walk. No extra weight.

7th Week:

A. M. Sunday, Tuesday, Thursday. Walk one mile, trot and canter 3 miles ($\frac{1}{2}$ canter, $\frac{1}{2}$ trot), then 8 miles at $6\frac{1}{2}$ miles per hour. 175 pounds up.

Monday, Wednesday. 18 miles at $6\frac{1}{2}$ miles per hour with 205 pounds up.

Friday. 40 miles in 6 hours with 225 pounds up. Weigh horses before starting and after finishing. Give Veterinary examination.

Saturday. Inspect, weigh, and give two hours walk.

P. M. One hour walk except Friday. Further training should be same as 6th week, except full weight should be carried on days when no cantering is done.

The horses were fed in accordance with each animal's individual need up to 14 pounds of oats and 14 pounds of hay. The animals were fed oats four times daily—at 6:00 A. M., 11:30 A. M., 4:30 P. M., and 8:30 P. M. Hay was fed—2 pounds at 11:00 A. M., and 12 pounds at 4:00 P. M. A small quantity of bran was also fed during the first two weeks of training.

Prior to the ride all horses were clipped, except a small patch on the back corresponding to the size of the saddle blanket which gave additional padding for the saddle.

In shoeing it was found best to use light shoes. The shoes on the hind feet were prepared with a clip, while on the front feet the rocker toe was used.

As regards equipment, the training saddle or officers field saddles were used. Weight was made up by use of weight pads with pockets in which lead slabs were inserted, or weight was placed in the pommel pockets. In some cases lead plates were placed around the stirrups and this covered with leather. In this way a pair of stirrups could be made to weigh 15 pounds. McClellan stirrups with the hood removed were used.

In the eight rides which have been held, first place has been won several times by mares and only once by a gelding.

The requirements are that the Mounted Service Cup must be won three times by an owner's entries before he becomes the permanent possessor of the cup. In 1923 the First Mounted Service Cup was awarded permanently to Mr. W. R. Brown, who won the cup three times with Arab entries. The Second Mounted Service Cup which was awarded permanently to the Third United States Cavalry this year was won three times by grade thoroughbreds.

Extracts from the Annual Report of the Chief of Cavalry

SINCE reporting for duty as Chief of Cavalry I have inspected all cavalry units of the regular establishment, and, in general, found them to be in an efficient and satisfactory condition.

In general, I believe that the cavalry of today is a better cavalry than that of pre-World War days, and I believe this condition is due entirely to the Cavalry School. I believe our equipment is better and is being better cared for, horses better trained, and tactical knowledge vastly superior to pre-war days.*****

Formerly the impression prevailed that all horses should have earth standings and not those of brick or concrete. It now seems to be an almost universal impression that more foot trouble develops from the old type earth stall than develops with the brick or concrete stall. In future construction this should be borne in mind and, when funds permit, this condition should be corrected wherever it exists in our present stables by providing permanent picket line and stable standings.****

Marching and the care of the horse and the soldier in the field are a most important part of a cavalryman's training. I believe it could well be emphasized to the exclusion of less important phases of training. Due to present-day conditions we have far less of it than formerly.***

An extensive study of the present organization is now being made with a view to reducing to a minimum the overhead personnel.***

The efficiency of the cavalry has been furthered during the past fiscal year, by the replacement of many unserviceable animals; progress in the supply of Phillips standard pack saddles which were adopted during the fiscal year 1925; the development, adoption and supply of the cavalry combat pack loads fitted to these saddles; and the replacement of the Browning automatic rifle with the Browning machine rifle.

The replacement of unserviceable animals with an excellent grade of remounts, has been accomplished through close co-operation with the Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps. The issue and development of pack loads and accessories fitted to the Phillips standard pack saddles has met with such progress that the Cavalry Division has been furnished practically its entire quota of pack equipment. The replacement of the Browning automatic rifle with the Browning machine rifle has been completed during the past fiscal year, and all cavalry organizations are now equipped with the latter type of weapon.

Work has been carried on in an effort to increase efficiency at a minimum expense, the consideration of new articles and designs being a step towards the revision of tables of allowances which will result in a reduction or elimination of unnecessary equipment. In this connection, profitable tests were conducted covering important items of equipment. During all projects a strict economic program has been carried out in accordance with the wishes of the Chief Executive.

The Cavalry School

Brigadier General Edward L. King was relieved as Commandant of The Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas, June 30, 1925, and was succeeded by Brigadier General Ewing E. Booth. Under the administration of General Booth, the Cavalry School has maintained throughout the year its high state of morale and efficiency. As in the preceding year, there were courses conducted as follows: Advanced Course; Troop Officers' Course; Special Advanced Equitation Course; Advanced Course for National Guard and Reserve Officers; Troop Officers' Course for National Guard and Reserve Officers; Horseshoers' Course; and Saddlers' Course. The last two courses named, are for enlisted men. They have not been worked to capacity on account of the lack of transportation funds. It is believed that more men from other branches should be sent to attend these courses. Excellent progress has been made in all departments of the Cavalry School, and the results can be seen throughout the cavalry service.

The Cavalry Board has performed much important work in the preparation and revision of training regulations and the development and testing of equipment. The Board has handled also many miscellaneous questions which have arisen. It has been of great assistance in all work pertaining to training, armament and equipment.

The Cavalry Division

Although the Cavalry Division is not directly under the jurisdiction of the Chief of Cavalry, it has performed such excellent work during the past year in conjunction with the work of the Cavalry Board, directed towards the development, testing, improvement, and adoption of equipment, and suggestions on organization and various phases of training, that it is desired in this report to invite attention to its splendid achievements. The Cavalry Division has maintained a state of high efficiency and readiness for field service. It has proved to be a splendid school of instruction for all commanders. The *esprit* of the division has kept pace with its other accomplishments.

The maneuvers held in 1923 have fully repaid for the expense involved. Every effort should be made to secure funds to hold these maneuvers annually, and to make available transportation funds in order that officers

from the Cavalry School and from other cavalry regiments may attend and be benefitted as observers and used as umpires.

The Organized Reserves

There are at present ninety-nine Regular cavalry officers on duty with the Organized Reserves. Of this total, substantially more than half are on duty with the Cavalry Organized Reserve. This office has exercised great care in the selection of officers for this duty. The result can be seen in the extensive, intelligent, and truly patriotic labors of the officers selected. Many means to arouse and maintain interest have been utilized. Especially during the inactive training period is it necessary to resort to diversified methods. Attractive bulletins have been published. Horse show and polo teams have been organized. Correspondence courses have been encouraged. Rifle and pistol competitions have been held, and many other means employed to maintain interest. In this connection, it is desired to invite attention to the helpful influence of National Guard organizations, as well as the Regular cavalry regiments, all of which have contributed to the instruction and pleasure of the Reserve Officers by making available for their use, equipment, armories, and even mounts. During the year, 429 Cavalry Reserve officers received training at camps or posts. 14 enlisted men from the 26th Cavalry, Philippine Scouts, are among those holding Cavalry Reserve commissions.

A paragraph from the last annual report of the Chief of Cavalry on this subject is quoted below, in view of the fact that it is believed to express the very best method of training Reserve officers—a method which should be encouraged at all cavalry stations: "The most efficient and economical method of training Cavalry Reserve officers on active duty is to send them to cavalry posts and require the Reserve officers to perform the actual duties incident to training and administration appropriate to their rank, under the supervision of Regular Army officers. During the latter part of the period of such instruction it has been found possible to turn over to the Reserve officers the entire administration and training of the appropriate units without any serious detriment to the organizations concerned."

The National Guard

Liaison has been maintained with the Militia Bureau in regard to organization and training of National Guard cavalry. Reports indicate that the forty-eight cavalry officers of the Regular Army on duty with the National Guard are accomplishing satisfactory results. Two National Guard cavalry officers attended the Advanced Course, and thirteen the Troop Officers' Course at the Cavalry School.

Cavalry Reserve Officers' Training Corps units throughout the country, except the New Mexico Military Academy at Roswell, New Mexico, have been inspected and made the subject of a separate report. The travel expense involved precluded the making of an inspection of the New Mexico Military

Academy. All of the units inspected were found to be in a satisfactory condition. An officer from this office was a member of the War Department Board inspecting twenty-seven colleges in the Third Army Area for the purpose of determining Distinguished Colleges. During the year 196 students from the Reserve Officers' Training Corps were commissioned in the Reserve. As the War Department study contemplates a necessary annual replacement of 381, it can be seen that either additional enrollment or more units are required. In the two preceding reports of the Chief of Cavalry, the establishment of three additional mounted units has been recommended. This recommendation is repeated. As the present appropriation bill prohibits the establishment of additional mounted units, it would be necessary to have the prohibition omitted from the bill.

The curtailment of advanced course enrollment has had an injurious effect on the entire Reserve Officers' Training Corps project. The reduction of the number of men on the Detached Enlisted Mens' List has caused reductions in the number of men on duty with Cavalry R. O. T. C. units, with a consequent failure to keep horses and equipment in the condition desired. It must be recognized that the impression Reserve Officers' Training Corps students receive in regard to care of animals and equipment will be a lasting one, and accordingly there should be sufficient men to maintain animals and equipment in proper condition. There are approximately sixty horses to each unit, and a detachment of seventeen men is necessary—1 stable sergeant; 1 horseshoer; and fifteen privates. This allotment gives each private the care of four horses and equipment, in addition to fatigue details, such as stable police, etc. As horses are used several times daily, a detachment of smaller size results in insufficient care of both horses and equipment.

The work of the Citizens' Military Training Camps has produced satisfactory results. While the Reserve Officers' Training Corps may produce, on the whole, better trained officers, the Citizens' Military Training Camps retain their immense popularity with the public, and open the way towards a commission to young men not fortunate enough to receive college training. It is believed that when young men indicate their desire to attend a Cavalry Citizens' Military Training Camp, it is done in anticipation of much riding and instruction in riding. Insistence on the actual fundamentals of horsemanship should be the keynote to cavalry instruction in Citizens' Military Training Camps. Adequate equipment and a sufficient number of animals should always be made available for such use.

Improvised Radio Equipment for National Guard Cavalry

By

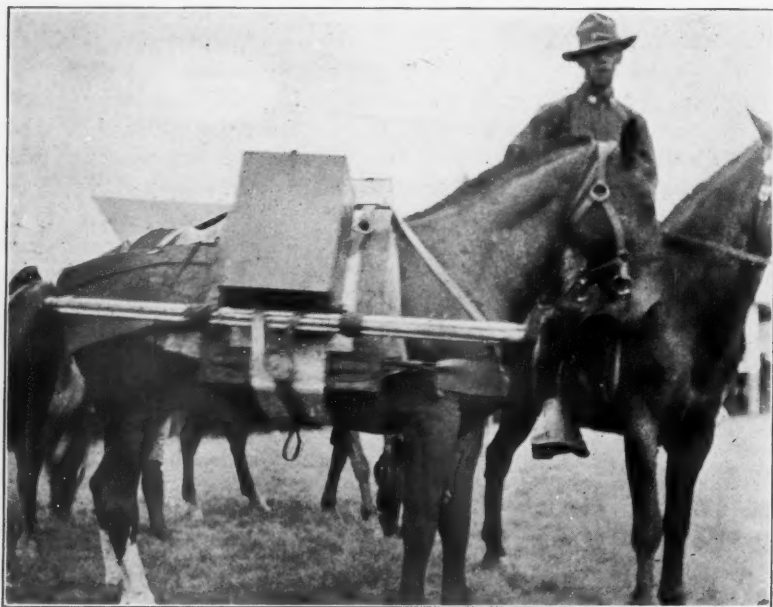
Captain KRAMER THOMAS, Cavalry

WHEN spring came this last year, with resumption of the mounted season and preparation for camp, the 105th Cavalry found itself again confronted with the same old problem; no suitable radio equipment. The economy program had denied us, in common with all other National Guard cavalry, anything in the nature of modern portable radio. In considering plans for camp we had decided to undertake some squadron and regimental problems that would illustrate likely employments for modern cavalry; but modern cavalry requires modern radio, so here was our problem. Knowing the impossibility of getting through regular supply channels, pack-type radio sets that would work, it seemed like a hopeless proposition until two enlisted men of the regiment, Sergeant Hatch and Private Pergande, said that they could build sets that would be portable, reliable and inexpensive. The Regimental Commander gave these men permission to go ahead, and the results obtained are, I believe, of interest to the National Guard cavalry generally.

Three sets were built, one for the Headquarters Troop and one for each Squadron Headquarters Detachment. The total cost of the three sets was about one hundred dollars. Each outfit consisted of a set-box measuring 12 inches x 12 inches x 18 inches, containing one tube and the necessary "innards" of a radio set. The "A" battery power was supplied by four ordinary two volt dry cells of the type used for operating door bells, etc. The "B" voltage was supplied by six Signal Corps dry cells issued for the purpose. The ground was a counterpoise wire about thirty feet long, and the antennae was a similar wire held up on one end by a mast made of three five foot sections of three-quarter inch and two five foot sections of half inch G. I. water pipe. Two light cotton guy ropes in addition to the antennae wire, support the mast.

The set is carried on one horse. In fact it is so light that in addition to the radio set, each squadron detachment carried all its signal equipment on the same horse. Two pack boxes were used on each horse, suspended from an improvised engineer saddle secured to an issue aparejo. Quarterstraps and a cincha secured the boxes down snugly. Each box was fitted with compartments to hold its particular article. Thus in the squadron outfits, there were compartments for the radio set box, telephones, batteries, buzzers, telephone

wire, antennae, guy ropes, etc. The loads were evenly balanced between the two boxes and the knocked-down mast sections were secured to brackets under the off pack-box. The total load on each horse is about one hundred seventy-five pounds. Were airplane panels issued to the Regiment, they could be carried as a top load. The Headquarters Troop had two packs, carrying between them a switchboard, three spools of wire, a radio set, telephones, buzzers, repair kits, breast-reels, telephone grounds, etc. In addition, one of the packs was rigged up with a carriage so that wire could be reeled out from the animal's back. With this equipment, the Regiment and both the squadrons had immediately available their complete signal equipment for use on the march or in combat.



The Pack

The pack carries the complete radio set, two buzzers, a telephone, a spool of wire, repair kit, spare batteries, etc. The sections of pipe shown are the mast.

The radio sets are of the short wave, low loss type and operate on forty meters wave length. While no real distance tests have been made as yet, the sets have given excellent results at all distances used, communication having been easily established at about ten miles without apparent diminution of volume or clarity. Signals from broadcasting stations have been heard over the sets from distances of more than five hundred miles. The same set and tube operates as a sending or receiving unit at the turning of a small switch.

The set is much simpler to operate than is the Army SCR 127 set, is smaller and lighter, and requires considerably less time to put up or take down, besides requiring a smaller crew. The fact that it requires but one pack horse is significant to the Guard where horses are usually very limited in number.



The Set in Operation

This light, one tube, radio set, operating entirely on dry batteries and requiring only one horse to carry it, lends itself well to the needs of National Guard Cavalry.

With this equipment at camp much interest was shown by all communications specialists and they were given a very thorough course in their respective tasks. At the end of camp, a regimental march was undertaken involving a communications problem, the radio phase of which is worth recording as illustrative of what the radio sets will do. The Regiment was assumed to have been detailed to march east to guard the crossings of a nearby river against a large Red force known to be marching west. One radio set was left in camp with an officer and represented the balance of the Brigade. The Regiment marched to a point covering what the Regimental Commander deemed to be the most likely crossing for the enemy, while one troop with a radio set attached, was sent by another route to a crossing several miles down river.

When these positions had been reached, the sets were set up and communication was promptly established from Regimental Headquarters to the detached troop and Brigade Headquarters. Messages, written by the Instructors, and up to that time kept secret, were then given to the different units, as though received from patrols, etc., indicating that, the enemy would attempt a crossing at a point between the Regiment and the detached troop. This information was promptly gotten to the Regimental Commander by radio



A Message Coming In

Regimental Commander and his staff awaiting a message.

and by him radio-ed to the Brigade. He then decided to march at once to the threatened crossing with the Regiment, directing the detached troop by radio to meet the command there. Another radio message informed the Brigade commander of the Regimental Commander's decision, and a replying radiogram stated that the Brigade would march at once to reinforce the Regiment. The march distances and gaits were so nicely judged that the heads of the three columns met simultaneously at the rendezvous, the location of which, and the time of assembly having been designated solely by radio. All messages went through quickly and correctly.

The Cavalry School Hunt Race Meeting and the Training of Steeplechasers

By

Major E. M. WHITING, Second Cavalry

THE Cavalry School Hunt Race Meeting on October 21st and 23rd was quite successful in many important respects. Its mission was to provide a variety of mounted sport that would be new to the school and the community, to provide a race course that would be creditable to the school, to demonstrate the schooling and conditioning of horses for steeplechasing, to raise funds for general athletic purposes, and to stimulate the breeding of good horses locally.

The first three parts of the mission were fully accomplished; the heavy expense of the second part, together with the amount of money expended for suitable prizes, precluded the accomplishment of the fourth part, while time alone will show whether or not the fifth and last part has been accomplished. The community, represented largely by the neighboring town of Junction City, supported the project whole-heartedly, closing all stores on the first afternoon of racing and attending en masse. There is no doubt of the popularity of racing in Junction City.

The total paid admissions were about \$2000.00, which was sufficient to cover all expenses and leave a profit of about \$250.00. The second and third prizes for the officers' steeplechases, which were four in number, cost \$300.00, and the cash purses for the four flat races and the enlisted men's steeplechase amounted to \$415.00. It should be stated in the beginning that the four handsome pieces of plate for the winners of the officers' steeplechases presented by Lieut. Col. Pierre Lorillard, Jr., QM-ORC, Mr. John McE. Bowman, President, United Hunts Racing Association, Mr. Richard H. Williams, President, American Remount Association, and that internationally known horseman and sportsman, Mr. Thomas Hitchcock, went far toward stimulating the interest of officers in the meeting. Seldom do winners of steeplechases receive such handsome trophies, and the fact that men of such prominence in the field of mounted sports approved the project, gave it a powerful impetus.

Having decided to hold a race meeting, the Commandant placed a field officer in charge of all arrangements, which included the conditioning and schooling of the horses, the construction of the course, the arrangement of the program, and the actual supervision of the racing, which was held under the sanction and rules of The Hunts Committee of The National Steeplechase and Hunt Association.

On the morning of September 1st, a non-commissioned officer and six privates of the Second Cavalry reported as attendants; on the afternoon of the

same day, the horses arrived, were placed in a vacant stable set apart for the purpose, and the work begun.

The first question asked by a trainer of the owner of newly arrived horses, is of what work they were doing immediately prior to arrival at the training stable. This question was quickly answered. With the exception of the two private horses of the trainer, they had been doing nothing, having been brought in from pasture the day before, and on account of a poor season for grass, all were thin. All of the horses were three-quarter bred or better; all but three had received more or less schooling, though not at speed; the three unschooled ones were cast-off runaway polo ponies whose only schooling had been over the backboards of the polo field. Over the past performances of this embryo racing stable, it is best to drop a veil of obscurity, and state that though of ripe years, all were maidens.

The conditioning of a prospective race horse must be built up by proper feeding and road work before he may be galloped on a track, so the entire stable was given from ten to fifteen miles daily on the road and across the fields, grazed for an hour in the afternoon, and fed three pounds of crushed oats five times daily. At the end of fifteen days road work, the rate of travel increasing gradually from six to ten miles per hour, the horses showed signs of fitness, and were ready for their first schooling over low jumps. On the 16th day of training, the entire stable was taken to one of the school courses for green jumpers, consisting of a three foot hedge, a three foot post and rail, and three small ditches. Led by the known jumpers, the whole stable went slowly over these jumps, traveling in the direction away from stables. The three ex-polo ponies looked over the jumps as they approached them, and followed their stable companions cheerfully enough. After a half mile warming gallop, the horses were divided into three groups of five each, each group in turn being taken up at the walk to look at the first jump, then given a galloping start—and their heads. All doubts as to the ability of the ex-polo ponies were quickly dispelled when each took the lead of her respective group and jumped in real racing form—running.

Two days later, this schooling was repeated, and on the 20th day of training, the horses were taken one by one over a schooling course consisting in order, of a hedge, three feet eight inches high; a Liverpool or open ditch, consisting of a hedge of the same dimensions as the first, but with a ditch five feet wide and one foot deep, guarded by a single rail, in front of the hedge; the third and last jump being a water jump, eight feet wide with a two and a half foot hedge in front of it, just high enough to conceal the water until the horse is about to rise for the jump. These jumps were placed about two hundred yards apart. The horses were taken up together and shown the first two jumps, then all were taken to a point about a hundred yards beyond and directly opposite the water jump, the riders dismounted and one at a time, each horse was given a short warming gallop and sent over the three jumps, thus galloping toward his stable companions who apparently watched the

performance with interest.

Each horse having demonstrated his ability to jump the course, they then were sent over the course twice a week in pairs, in order to accustom them, after a fashion, to jumping in company. These three schooling jumps were too narrow for more than two green horses to take at a time. After going over the small schooling course in pairs, three times on as many different days, including one morning when the going was very wet and slippery, resulting in one fall and much slipping by all, schooling was begun on the regular course, which by that time was ready. It consisted of four ordinary hedges, four feet high, three feet wide; Liverpool or open ditch, consisting of a ditch five feet wide, two feet deep, guarded by an oak board, one foot high and three inches thick, with a regular hedge on the landing side; and a regular water jump, twelve feet wide, with a two foot, eight inch hedge on the take-off side. The water was two feet deep on the side next the hedge, and tapered off to no depth on the landing.

As this course was unfortunately between four and five miles distant from the stable, this distance had to be considered in determining the length of gallop and number of jumps to be taken in the twice-a-week schooling, so that the first schooling included only the first two hedges, and the number of jumps taken was increased each time until they finally went a turn of the field. It is worthy of note here, that while the horses were shown the jumps before being sent over them, they were never shown the water jump, and they got their first view of that jump while approaching it in company and at high speed. Once a horse has jumped water, he will seldom hesitate afterward, if he is sent at it fast, but once a horse has taken a dislike to a type of jump, he may never be depended upon to go over that jump afterward. First impressions are lasting. Another point to be stressed is, that when a good jumper refuses, there is generally some cause for the refusal. He should be ridden once more at the jump immediately after the refusal, and if he refuses again, do not get up a fight with him, but take him quietly away, and try to discover the cause of refusal. The chances are that he will jump all right the next time he is schooled. An unwilling jumper never will win a steeplechase; he may go a mile or so, but as soon as he tires, he will run out or refuse.

But to return to the training. At the beginning of the third week of training, the long slow gallops so essential to steeplechasers were begun. Since horses should not be worked, or required to make an effort more often than twice a week, and the fact that the nine and a half miles to be traversed in going to and returning from the course, made the trip and the schooling combined, quite an effort, great care had to be taken not to overdo the galloping on the flat on other than schooling days. A compromise had to be made. They were given from two to three miles slow gallop on the well turfed Smoky Hill flat, with from a quarter to a half mile breeze at the end of each slow gallop. Here, also, existed a situation unlike that at a regular race track. The only possible galloping ground was nearly a mile and a half from the

stable, and shortage of riders and grooms made it impossible to give the horses that immediate quick rub and massage of muscles and tendons given at a regular race track after a gallop.

The cavalryman must adapt himself to conditions as he finds them; so did these riders adapt themselves. Immediately upon pulling up, the rider dismounted, loosened the girths, and led out toward stables. After leading half a mile, he remounted and rode the remaining mile at the walk, and generally, the horses were nearly cool upon arrival at the stable. Upon arrival at the stable, the horse was given about five minutes vigorous rub with a piece of rough towel, given a few swallows of water, covered with a light cooling blanket well pinned about the throat and chest, walked about the corral until cool within as well as without. During the walk, they were given water, a few swallows at a time, so that by the time the walk was over, the water lost by sweating had been replaced. Later, all horses were given a thorough grooming. In training, the condition of coat is one of the best guides to a correct estimate of the general health and fitness. Although the conditioning of these horses began in extremely hot weather, and ended in quite cold weather, there was not a single case of cold among them. The brisk exercise and rubbing kept the hair short, so that they cooled quickly, and were kept in motion while cooling.

At the termination of the fifteen days of roadwork, when schooling and faster work began, and on account of the risk that some horse might through accident be fed grain too shortly before or after a gallop, it was decided to return to feeding three times daily, instead of five, and the amount fed was regulated only by the appetites of the individual horses—they were given all that they would eat, the amounts varying from sixteen to twenty pounds of oats daily; the amounts consumed varying with amount of work done and the size of the horse.

Great care was taken that no horse was saddled for work until an hour had elapsed after feeding, nor was any horse fed grain until perfectly cool. Hay may be given immediately after work, but not grain. The amount of hay fed was gradually decreased during the last two weeks of work, until only about two-thirds of the normal amount was fed, and on the evening before a workout or race, no hay at all was fed, and only a half feed of grain given for the feed next preceding a work-out or race. A full feed of grain followed too closely by fast work is one of the surest ways of producing bleeders. Zinc feed boxes were used, and kept scrupulously clean at all times. Whenever a horse failed to eat all of his grain, the matter was looked into immediately. Loss of appetite indicates something wrong, and something must be done about it; among other things, the work must be reduced until his appetite returns.

For the first three weeks of training, the horses were shod with the lightest issue shoes available, on account of the long slow road and cross country work, and at the end of three weeks, they were shod with the light rim steel shoes that are used on the School polo ponies, and without heels on

the hind shoes. Omitting the heels or caulks behind was an ill-advised experiment, the only hope of success of which was the possibility that the rim steel would provide sufficient grip for the take-off. As long as the shoes held their sharp edge, and the going was just right, no difficulty was encountered, but the first time the going was slippery, it was found that like most departures from long established and well tried customs, the omission of heels or caulks was a mistake. The proper shoeing of all horses is of the utmost importance, particularly the shoeing of race horses, and failure to keep their feet comparatively short by means of shoeing at three week intervals, will invariably result in damaged tendons. The feet should be kept perfectly clean at all times, and the shoes inspected before and after work, in order that a loose shoe may receive prompt attention.

It is not possible to cover in any one article the subject of the care and training of racehorses, nor was it possible under the conditions to develop the power and speed of each of these horses to the maximum, but it is a fact that these horses were able to stand a hard drive of a two mile steeplechase the first day, and either a two and a quarter or three mile steeplechase the next racing day, which was the second day following the first racing day, and they carried weights of from 161 to 165 pounds over jumps that loomed up big to horses of their small size and limited experience. And further, with the exception of one horse that was injured on a jump on the first racing day, every horse was ready to start again after a day of rest following the second day of racing.

There is one unalterable principle governing the preparation of horses or any other animal, man included, for any sort of test, and that principle is *building up* instead of *using up* the strength and endurance of the animal, and remember in the case of race horses, that many a race is lost by too many long fast trials. Never work your horse to the limit of his power, and on the day of the race, in that last bitter half mile, that reserve that you have carefully built up and conserved, will take him to the finish at the maximum pace of which he is capable, and an angel can do no more than that.

It is not possible to learn horsemanship by reading books or looking at pictures, but one can add greatly to his store of practical information by study of the experience of others, and his own actual experience will enable him to quickly recognize and understand what he reads or sees. A careful study of photographs of professional steeplechase jockeys in action, will indicate the correct seat, length of rein, etc., and after the novice has ridden a race or two, he will find that the way of the professional with a horse is for the purpose the correct way.

The outstanding characteristics of a good steeplechase rider are courage, alertness and patience. Cavalry led by officers possessing these characteristics will uphold the honorable traditions of The Mounted Service.

The National Western Endurance Ride---1926

By

Colonel H. R. RICHMOND, 13th Cavalry

THE National Western Endurance Ride for 1926, was held at Colorado Springs, Colorado, during five consecutive days, from September 13th to 17th, inclusive. On the morning of the 18th the judges rendered their decision, the time factor counting 40%, the condition of horses, 60%.

The following were the judges: Mr. Richard Waring, of New York and Texas; Mr. Charles Carey, of Cheyenne, Wyoming; Mr. John Williams, of the Department of Animal Husbandry, Washington, D. C.

The following were the entrants:

From Troop A, 13th Cavalry: *Tomahawk*. Bay Gelding; 8 years; height 15-3½; weight, 1150; sire *Lebold*; dam, a half Morgan and half Standardbred mare; rider, Sergeant Thomas Garrity.

From the 4th Cavalry, Fort Meade:

Abject, ridden by Captain Norman E. Fiske.

Stella, ridden by Sergeant Kroskaski.

Batty, ridden by Corporal Cardin.

Whistler, entered as a substitute.

From Fort Riley: *Vamp*, ridden by Private Del Harris, Veterinary Corps.

From Colorado Springs: *Ranger*, ridden by Mr. W. Johns.

From St. Mathews: *Irene Castle*, ridden by Mr. Philip Cole.

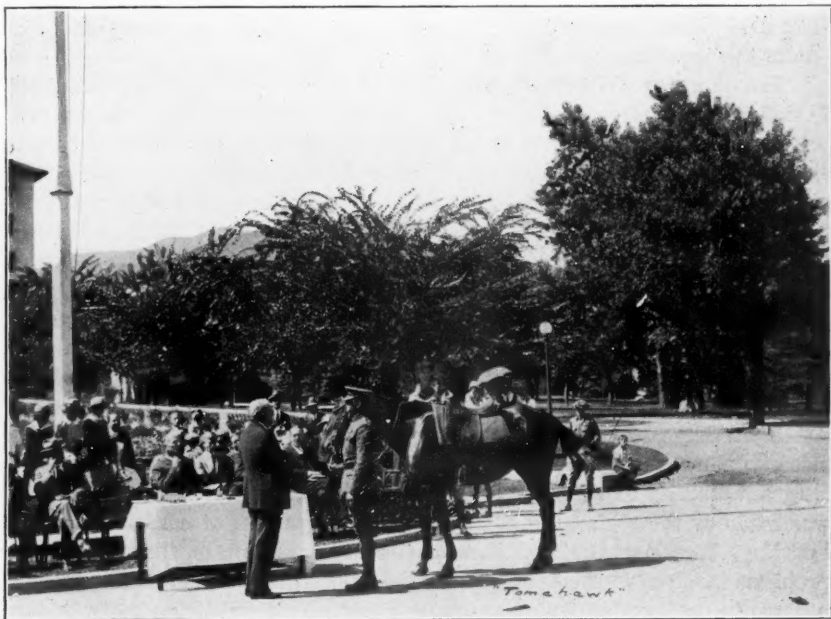
From Cripple Creek: *Prince*, ridden by Mr. Frank Gerard.

In the 1925 ride, *Tomahawk*, ridden by Sergeant Garrity, had won third place; he might have won first place had he not suffered a loss of thirty-five pounds in weight, and a sore back due to the breaking of the dee ring of one stirrup strap during the fourth day, which caused his rider to have to ride several miles with one stirrup only. With the experience gained, however, Sergeant Garrity came home in 1925, determined to enter for 1926 and to win first place.

In March, 1926, Sergeant Garrity commenced to condition and train *Tomahawk*. In the stall he kept hay and fresh water available for the horse at all times. Oats were fed four times a day, working up to a total of fourteen pounds daily; three pounds at 5:30 A. M.; three at 11:30 A. M.; four at 4:30 P. M. (boiled oats at this feed, adding a little salt and a little bran), and four pounds at 8:00 P. M. During the training period, close attention was given to the horse's legs; a total of four bottles of absorbine and about three gallons of witch hazel, mixed, with a little vinegar and saltpeter added, was used for washing and hand rubbing the legs. After each washing and hand rubbing, loose bandages were kept on the legs for three hours.

The horse was taken out daily, at the walk, the distance each day varying from ten to thirty miles, according to the condition and action of the horse.

Then followed walks of three and one-half hours duration daily, with stripped saddle; followed by the same with the saddle packed, less rifle and saber. This was followed by a thirty day period of walking and trotting, covering a distance of about eighteen miles a day at the rate of about five miles an hour. Then, six days out of each week, over a period of thirty days, the horse was trotted from eight to ten miles without a stop. During the next period of thirty days, the same general procedure was followed, introducing, in addition, an occasional fifty mile trip in eight hours. As a result of a fifty mile trip, the horse's legs filled in the side gaskins; so the shoes were pulled, the tendons and hocks were blistered, and the horse turned out in the regimental pasture for a period of complete rest. At the end of twenty days he returned to work, looking game and feeling fine, his legs clean.



The Winner

Sergeant Garrity, Troop A, 13th Cavalry, and *Tomahawk*. Photo taken in 1925 showing them receiving the prize for third place.

Training was at once resumed, walking for four and five hours daily at five miles an hour for a week, and then long trots again for two weeks, followed by another fifty mile trip in eight hours. The horse was then turned loose again in the pasture for ten days, from which he returned in sound condition. From then on up to August 25th, trips of fifteen miles were taken daily, chiefly at the trot, and carrying 215 pounds weight. For a few days the horse was allowed a rest period. This rest period was used in making preparations for

the trip from Fort D. A. Russell to Colorado Springs. The distance is 188 miles, which was covered in six days, by marching. After arrival at Colorado Springs, the time remaining prior to the actual start of the Endurance Ride, a distance of ten miles was covered, daily.

During the progress of the test it was noted that the horse traveled better when not allowed to drink all the water he wanted. Arrangements had been made for watering, every seven miles after leaving the fifteen mile post. *Tomahawk* was allowed but one bucket full of water at each stop. The noon stop and the evening stop, were preceded by walking during the last mile, so that the judges found on examination morning, noon, and night that temperature, respiration and pulse were normal. The whip or spur was never used to urge on the horse. His face was protected from flies and gnats by a piece of gauze and by a horsetail switch carried by his rider. On the last day of the ride the horse appeared fresh and eager to go on, and traveled better on the last day than on the first.

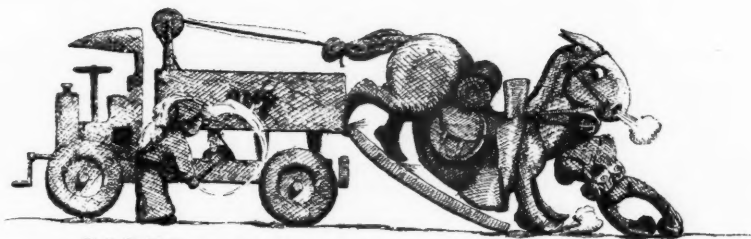
The morning following the finish of the ride, September 18, 1926, *Tomahawk* came from the stables at the appointed time and was brought before the judges. He showed no signs of lameness, and after a careful examination by the judges his condition was found to be perfect (60%) and his time 35.4%; a total of 95.4%. So *Tomahawk*, ridden by Sergeant Thomas Garrity, Troop "A", 13th Cavalry, Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming, was given first prize; *Stella*, second; *Vamp*, third; and *Prince*, fourth.

Both in 1925 and 1926, the entire personnel of the regiment took great interest in the conditioning and training of *Tomahawk* by Sergeant Garrity, and were proud of the record made in both years. Upon his return from Colorado Springs in 1925 a regimental parade and review was tendered him and his horse.

Upon Sergeant Garrity's return in 1926, there was an assembly of all the officers, non-commissioned officers and specialists of the regiment, with Sergeant Garrity and his horse present as the guests of honor. An address was made by the regimental commander on the subject of conformation and breeding, horsemanship and horsemastership, and an explanation of the problems involved in the selection, conditioning, training, and management of a horse in preparation for an endurance ride. This was followed by a most instructive talk by Sergeant Garrity himself, during which he answered all sorts of questions from officers and non-commissioned officers as to management preparatory to the ride and during the actual test.

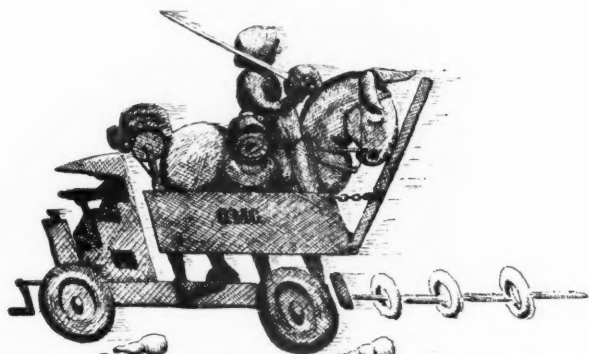
Upon the request of Sergeant Garrity, *Tomahawk* will not again be entered in the Colorado Endurance Ride; the regiment would like to enter him in an eastern ride, if satisfactory financial arrangements could be made with regard to expense. Plans are being made, however, to enter certain other selected horses in the Colorado Endurance Ride for 1927.

The Regiment feels that Sergeant Garrity is a horseman and horsemaster, *par excellence*; to officers and men alike, his work with *Tomahawk* during the past two years has been an example and an inspiration.



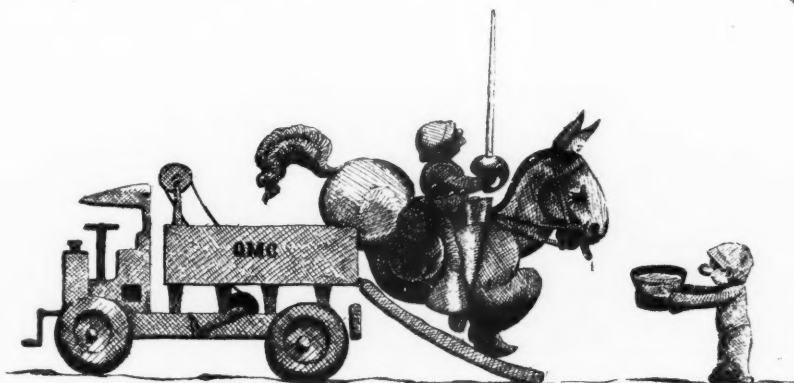
PORTEE CAVALRY - ENTRUCKING

ALBRECHT
1918



PORTEE CAVALRY - APPROACH MARCH

ALBRECHT
1918



PORTEE CAVALRY - DETRUCKING

Dedicated to those who believe that at times the Cavalry, in order to increase its mobility, may find it desirable to follow the example of the Field Artillery and utilize the well-known Q. M. conveyance.

Editorial Comment

MAJOR GENERAL ROBERT LEE HOWZE

The death on September 19, 1926, of Major General Robert Lee Howze, took from our midst an officer of the highest personal qualities and pro-



Major General Robert Lee Howze

fessional attainments whom the army and the nation could ill afford to lose. An enthusiastic and gifted cavalryman, his career will always be an inspiration for those who follow in his footsteps.

The careers of few officers have been as varied and as full of honors as

has that of General Howze who served his country in an Indian campaign, as well as in Cuba, the Philippines, Porto Rico, Mexico, France and Germany.

He was awarded the Medal of Honor: "For gallantry in repulsing the attacks of hostile Sioux Indians on the north bank of the White River near the mouth of Little Grass Creek, North Dakota, Jan. 1, 1891."

Awarded two silver star citations by the War Department as follows:

1st Citation: For gallantry in action against Spanish forces at the battle of Santiago, July 1, 1898.

2d Citation: For gallantry in action in the pursuit of superior forces of the enemy, under the insurgent General Tinio, in Northern Luzon, P. I., Dec. 4-18, 1899, through a most dangerous and difficult country, through hardships and exposure, thereby forcing the enemy to liberate twenty-two American prisoners held by him Dec. 18, 1899.

Awarded the Distinguished Service Medal: "For exceptionally meritorious and distinguished services. As commander of the 3d Division on its march to the Rhine and during the occupation of the enemy territory, he proved himself energetic and capable, exhibiting superb qualities of leadership. He maintained an unusually high standard of efficiency in his unit, rendering eminently conspicuous services as a division commander."

Awarded French Croix de Guerre with palm; and French Legion of Honor (officer).

All who were fortunate enough to be associated with General Howze in a personal or official capacity, regret the passing of a loyal friend and a true soldier.

THE STUDY OF LANGUAGES

The study of languages by military men has always been encouraged in this country on account of its giving access to a large reservoir of military literature, and also in order to fit officers for special and important duties which frequently, by virtue of their official position, they are called upon to perform. It is believed, however, that the individual officer does not give this subject the attention to which it is entitled. It is true that those who graduate at the Military Academy are given a ground work in French and Spanish, but how few make any systematic effort to continue the good work thus begun, with a view to making themselves proficient in one or both of these important tongues.

Many officers who read this have doubtless had frequent occasion to regret that they had neglected to pursue further a study which had begun so auspiciously; a neglect which probably placed them at a great individual disadvantage or seriously handicapped them in the performance of some duty requiring a knowledge of one of these languages. Transacting business through an interpreter is always unsatisfactory, and it is a well known fact that dependence upon an interpreter has frequently resulted in misunder-

standings and embarrassment.

Although English is making great strides, French is still the language of diplomacy, and will always be important for officers stationed in Europe or Asia. For the officer stationed at any of the capitals on this hemisphere, a knowledge of Spanish is desirable. A large force of cavalry is stationed on our southern border and contact with the Mexican authorities and people is almost constant. An officer thus stationed who is fluent in Spanish, is unquestionably of much greater value to his government than is one without that qualification.

Our relations with all of the republics to the south of us are bound to be more intimate as the years go by, and a thorough acquaintance with their language will be of immeasurable assistance in cultivating a better understanding between our respective governments and peoples. The visit of the Pan-American journalist who recently toured this country, demonstrated the benefits of a closer acquaintance between the so-called Latin American republics and ourselves, and has brought home to many the realization, that a mutual knowledge of our languages is a great asset.

The subject of military literature has already been mentioned. There are many important military works in French, Italian, German, and Spanish, which are never translated into English, and the military periodicals in these languages contain many articles of great professional value. While some may feel that our own authorities on the art of war are sufficient, the fact remains that history has demonstrated that no one nation is the sole repository of military knowledge and prowess.

HELP OUR INTERNATIONAL RIFLE TEAM

The National Rifle Association has sent out a call for financial assistance for the International Rifle Team of 1927, which it is hoped will be heeded by all citizens who are interested in our retaining the prestige of being the leading rifle shooting nation of the world.

As a result of our participation in the matches of the International Union in 1921, we took the world's title and the Argentine Cup from the Swiss, the first defeat they had suffered in twenty-one years. The United States retained the trophy and title against constantly improving competition for four years, but last year the Swiss Rifle Team defeated our team and regained the championship of the world.

A Herculean effort is necessary if we are to defeat the Swiss team in the spring of 1927. The prospective candidates must be immediately assembled at central points for preliminary training. The best shots must then be assembled for the final tryout and the team selected and transported to Rome, where the 1927 shoot will be held.

To accomplish all of the above requires considerable effort and some financial assistance. Concerted effort on the part of those who believe in preparing the youth of the nation for its defense, will make it possible for

America to be represented in Rome in 1927, by a team of real championship caliber.

No contribution is too small and none too large. Send your contribution to the National Rifle Association, 1108 Woodward Building, Washington, D. C.

A MEMBERSHIP RECORD

As an example of the interest in their profession and their arm evinced by National Guard units, attention is invited to the membership in the Cavalry Association, of the 1st Squadron, 106th Cavalry, National Guard of Michigan. In addition to all of the officers being members, the number of enlisted men enrolled as members and subscribers to the CAVALRY JOURNAL is as follows: Headquarters Detachment, 5; Troop A, 20; Troop B, 10; Troop C, 19.

This is a record which it is believed has never been equaled in any branch of any component of the army.

The commanding officer of this squadron is Major Harold T. Weber. Major H. T. Aplington, Cavalry, is the instructor on duty with it.

At date of going to press, the following regular organizations are 100 per cent in Association membership: 2d Cavalry, 4th Cavalry, 6th Cavalry, 12th Cavalry, 13th Cavalry, 14th Cavalry and the Cavalry School.

WINNER OF GOODRICH TROPHY

Troop F, Third Cavalry, stationed at Fort Myer, Virginia, and commanded by Captain Jess G. Boykin, is the winner of the Goodrich Trophy for the year of 1926. This trophy was donated by Mr. L. E. Goodrich, of Miami, Florida, to the Cavalry service for annual competition.

The competition for the trophy was held during the past Fall, and was open to all the cavalry of the Regular Army. Troops were selected to represent regiments and detached squadrons by virtue of their excellence in routine duties covering the last year. The following organizations were designated as the best troops available in their respective commands, and, as such, took part in the final test: Troop F, Second Cavalry; Troop B, Third Cavalry; Troop F, Third Cavalry; Troop A, Fourth Cavalry; Troop C, Sixth Cavalry; Troop F, Tenth Cavalry; Troop A, Thirteenth Cavalry; Troop A, Fourteenth Cavalry; Troop F, Fourteenth Cavalry.

The test was essentially practical and was based on training standards for routine work in the use of the rifle, pistol, saber, and machine rifle, in combat firing, and in the care and equipment of animals and equipment. It included a fifty mile march with an imposed time limit of from eleven to fifteen hours, for its completion. Each competing troop was also required, among other things, to solve a problem in combat firing.

The winner of the trophy was determined as a result of a very careful and detailed system of rating. In the rating Troop F, Third Cavalry, was awarded a score of 951 points, with its nearest competitor following at 928.

The trophy is a bronze figure of a horse designed and sculptured by Mr. A. Phimster Proctor, a prominent American Sculptor of animals, many of whose figures are well known in Washington and New York. Mr. Proctor is at present in Rome where the trophy is being completed.

Topics of the Day

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL HUNT RACE MEETING

THE Cavalry School Hunt with its very successful Race Meeting held October 21 and 23 at Fort Riley, has initiated a sporting event which it is hoped, may become a semi-annual feature at the Cavalry School.

The Meeting, which was sanctioned by the Hunts Committee of the National Steeple Chase and Hunt Association, and actively supported by Brigadier General E. E. Booth, the Commandant, aroused much interest at Fort Riley and vicinity. Each day's racing was witnessed by several thousand spectators.

Much of the credit for the success of the Meeting is due Major E. M. Whiting who was the moving spirit back of the enterprise, as well as being in charge of the training of the service entries. Attention is invited to his interesting and instructive article in this number of the *CAVALRY JOURNAL*.

The following account of the two day's racing is taken from the *Junction City Union*.

First Day

The first event was a quarter mile flat race open to all and was won by *Interview*, Daugherty up. *Skylark*, Harrison up, was second, and *Dean*, Major Franklin up, was third. Time, 0:26.

The Remount Service steeplechase, with a piece of plate presented by R. H. Williams, President of the American Remount Association as the capital prize, was won by *Lady Finn*, a Department of Horsemanship horse, Capt. H. N. Beeman up. *Diplomat*, from the Second Cavalry polo stables, Lieut. Wofford up, finished second and *Descendant*, owned and ridden by Major Whiting, third. Time, 4:12¾. *Potomac*, Capt. Duke up, one of the Department horses, went down on one of the jumps and was quite badly cut about the breast. The horse has been withdrawn from Saturday's races as a result.

The third event, the Mounted Service Steeplechase, with government owned horses ridden by enlisted men, proved the most exciting of the meet with several spills, and a horse, fondly denominated by the men of the troop as the ugliest animal at Fort Riley, leading the field by a wide margin.

Pvt. Baumgardner, Troop B, Second Cavalry, on *Tony Winchester*, took two spills but finished the race. *Holdover*, Headquarters Troop, Second Cavalry, went down on one of the jumps, and his rider, Pvt. Jeremiah Garrison, sustained a broken nose and lacerated head, but is reported at the hospital to be in no danger.

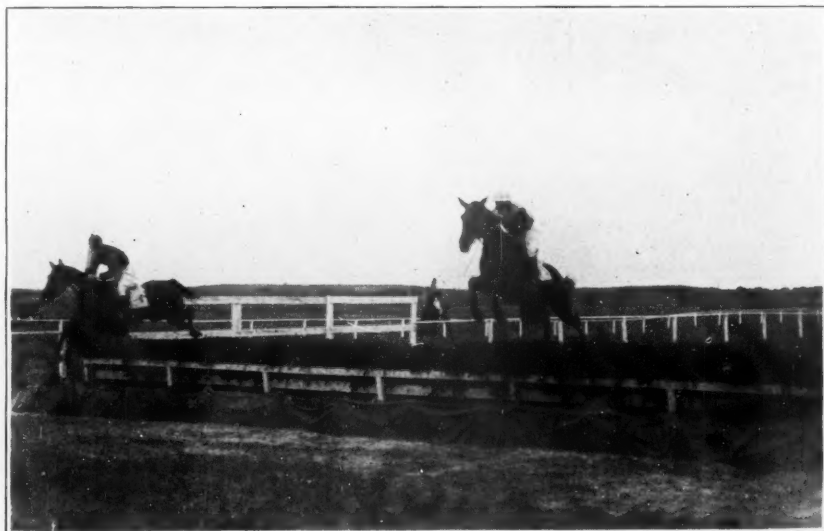
Spike, Troop G, Second Cavalry, the aforesaid "ugliest" horse, Corp. Lardrup up, finished first, *Buffalo Bill*, of the same outfit, Pvt. S. Zikoski up, second, and *Chance*, Troop C, Second Cavalry, third. Time, 3:38¼.

The fourth race, a half mile free for all, developed a neck and neck finish. *Bill Saportas*, Capt. Duke up, finished first; *Miss Maddux*, Capt. Beeman up, second; *Justine E.*, Lieut. F. O. Dewey up, third. Time, 0.54.

The final race, the Cavalry School Steeplechase, for the Lorillard plate, was won by *Helen*, Major Franklin up, with *Elaine*, Lieut. Wofford up, finishing second, and *Hastings*, Capt. Wharton up, third. *Lough Doris*, Major Whiting up, took a nasty spill on the third jump when a shoe crumpled. Major Whiting was badly shaken up but not injured. The horse ran three miles across the reservation before being caught and may be incapacitated for Saturday's meet.

Second Day

Four horses fell with their red-coated riders, in the five and a half minutes of the spectacular three mile steeplechase which brought the Autumn race meet of the Cavalry School Hunt to a dramatic close. Gray skies and cold winds had lessened the number of spectators but not their enthusiasm,



In the Air

and Captain Wharton was heartily acclaimed as he galloped in alone on *Hastings*, the only horse to triumph over the seventeen stiff jumps. *Helen*, winner of the Lorillard plate on Thursday, came to grief over the Liverpool jump in the first mile, and the crowd breathed relief when Major Franklin rose uninjured. For two miles and a half *Descendant*, Major Whiting's big chestnut, looked an easy winner, setting a fast pace for the three who followed closely bunched. At the fourteenth jump *Diplomat* tired and went down with Lt. Wofford. *Descendant* struck the next fence and spilled Major Whiting, who was riding with one rib already broken by his fall on Thursday, but sustained no additional injuries yesterday. *Lady Finn* was over the last jump and rounding into the home stretch barely a length behind *Hastings*, but turned down toward the water jump by mistake; and as Captain Beeman swung her around, she blundered into the rail and was thrown into a complete somersault, leaving her rider on the ground unconscious. Captain Beeman revived in a few minutes and was able to walk in to the finish with the other contestants to congratulate Captain Wharton as he received from

General Booth the large silver platter presented by Mr. John McEntee Bowman, president of the United Hunts Racing Association.

The first race was a consolation quarter-mile, open to all except the winners of the half and quarter miles on Thursday. The winner on Saturday was *Babe Jones*, owned and ridden by Mr. Jones of Salina. Second, *Dean*, Major Franklin up, the Second Cavalry polo pony which took third on Thursday. *Rusty*, owned and ridden by Lt. F. O. Dewey, third. Time: 0:26 $\frac{1}{4}$.

The Thomas Hitchcock Cup steeplechase opened with a false start, in which *Flying Yank* and *El Supremo* made a complete turn of the field, adding almost a mile to the official distance of two and a quarter miles. The mishaps of Thursday thinned the field, causing *Potomac* and *Lough Doris* to be scratched. The worst spill of the day occurred at the first jump, as the favorite, *El Supremo*, arriving half a length behind the other two horses, took off with them and struck the jump, rolling over and over with his rider, Captain Ellis, who was painfully but not seriously bruised and strained. *Flying Yank* and *Elaine* continued a neck-and-neck race up to the last jump, when Lt. Wofford's mare pulled away to finish fifteen lengths ahead of Captain Wharton's mount, for the handsome Hitchcock cup. Time, 4:40.

Salina triumphed again in the consolation half-mile flat race, when Mr. Jones' *King Tut*, Malen up, finished half a length ahead of the Cavalry School Polo Stables' *Miss Maddux*, ridden by Captain Beeman. *Justine E.*, owned and ridden by Lt. Dewey, was third. Time, 0:53 $\frac{3}{4}$. *Vamp*, owned by Captain Beeman and ridden by Pvt. Harris, V. C., furnished amusement for the crowd when he ran the half mile alone from a false start.

CAVALRY BOARD NOTES

THE following list of the more important items that have been acted upon by the Cavalry Board during the past six months has been furnished by Major J. J. O'Hara, Recorder of the Board.

a. Training—T. R. 500—30 Applicatory Training Exercises, T. R. 435—30, Tactical Employment of Anti-aircraft Service, and T. R.—Methods of Training were reviewed by the board, which recommended approval of the first two, with certain suggested changes, and which proposed in place of the last a revised training regulation entitled T. R.—Training Management.

b. Armament.—

(1) *Hotchkiss Automatic Arms.*—A light machine gun and an automatic rifle, both of Hotchkiss type, 30 caliber, were given an informal test. It was found that these guns possessed no advantages worth considering over the Browning automatic rifle and machine rifle.

(2) *Cavalry saber, experimental.*—The saber tested consisted of a blade identical with that on the British cavalry saber, and a hilt similar to, though somewhat larger than, our present model. The experimental saber was found superior to our issue saber as to balance and wrist support, and as to general handiness; but its weight, 51 ounces, was believed excessive. The blade proved stronger and more rigid, and its penetration greater than was the case with our present saber. The hilt also was found to be an improvement upon the issue hilt, but it is still too large and heavy. A modified experimental saber was recommended for additional tests. A metal olive drab scabbard was also recommended.

(3) *Sight for Browning Machine Gun.*—Upon request of the Ordnance Department the board submitted its views as to the requirements of a

rear sight for the Browning Machine Gun, Model of 1917. A sight of the type used on the Schwarzlos Machine Gun was recommended for test, provided such a sight can be adapted to the Browning Gun.

c. Equipment.—

(1) *Duralumin and woven felt for Phillips Saddles.*—As a result of tests Duralumin was recommended as a substitute for steel in certain parts of the Phillips saddle; and woven felt was found superior to calfskin for saddle pad lining.

(2) *Pioneer Pack.*—The pioneer pack developed by the Eighth Cavalry and manufactured by the Corps of Engineers was, as a result of test, found suitable for adoption. This experimental pack has been shipped to the 1st Cavalry Division for comparative test with a similar pack developed by the 7th Cavalry.

(3) *Watches, Elgin, 7-15 Jewel.*—Two pocket watches, and two wrist watches were recorded as satisfactory after a six months service test. A time interval recorder proved defective.

(4) *Lensatic Compasses.*—A number of lensatic compasses that had been reconditioned or modified were subjected to test. It was recommended that a more satisfactory bubble trap be designed.

(5) *Jack-o-lite Lantern.*—The Jack-o-lite lantern is a unique electrical device that produces light without the use of a battery, but depends upon an induction type generator, driven by a phonograph spring, for the power to operate a small flashlight bulb. The lantern was considered too heavy and too unwieldy for cavalry purposes.

(6) *Batteries BA-10.*—The board concurred in the recommendations of the Signal Corps as to the substitution of Batteries BA-17 in place of the BA-10 type.

(7) *Cavalry Wire Requirements.*—The Signal Corps Board has recommended the abandonment of types W-43 and W-44, and the reduction of the number of types of field wire for tactical use to two, i. e., a heavy twisted pair of diameter and weight not greater than W-40, and a light twisted pair of about the same weight as old type W-46. As a result of the above action the Cavalry Board has recommended for cavalry units, the size of a brigade or smaller, a medium sized wire between the present issue outpost twisted pair and the light twisted pair recommended by the Signal Corps,—the proposed wire to be issued both as twisted pair, for brigade headquarters use, and as single conductor, for lower units. It was also recommended that a new type German wire be subjected to test. This last is a single conductor wire, which though less flexible than the present outpost types, has a tensile strength double that of the outpost single conductor, and has also less weight per unit.

(8) *Motor Vehicle Development.*—The board concurred with the Quartermaster Technical Committee as to the method of standardizing motor vehicles. It was recommended that the using service should merely specify their requirements, and that the Engineer section at Camp Holabird should conduct the necessary tests and select designs of vehicles as will best fulfill the specified requirements.

c. Annual Report.—On November 26, 1926 the board submitted to the Chief of Cavalry its annual report on adopted types of armament and equipment. Once each year the board holds special meetings for the purpose of considering each article of cavalry equipment and armament with a view to suggesting improvements in defective articles or of eliminating unnecessary ones.

Foreign Military Notes

FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY INFORMATION DIVISION, G. S.

CHINA

Organization and Operation of Bandit Bands

FOR years banditry in China has been accepted by both the Chinese and foreigners as an institution which had to be reckoned with in any undertakings, especially those away from the treaty ports. In fact, it might be said with equal truth that the institution of banditry goes back for centuries, for most of the ancient, isolated towns in North China are either surrounded by walls for protection against bandits, or have in their immediate vicinity, strongholds to which the population may retire on occasions.

There is a somewhat wide-spread impression among foreigners, fostered by the Chinese, that banditry in China is the occasional occupation of a limited number of lawless people, and as such, is of no greater significance than the activities of similar persons in other countries. This is not correct however, for, on the contrary, it is a highly organized industry which has existed since time immemorial, including in its ranks many former officers and soldiers of the army. In addition, many of the members of the bandit bands on occasions, transfer either as individuals or as units of companies, battalions or more and are duly incorporated into the army.

While in general the equipment of the bandit bands is inferior, occasionally organizations are met with which are extremely well equipped. Recruits have always been easily obtained from amongst younger sons whose inheritance in lands is insufficient for their support, and from ex-soldiers, deserters, outlaws and captives. Arms and ammunition are secured by purchase, by theft, or from deserters from the army.

While it is impossible to arrive at any accurate estimate of the number of bandits in China, it is probably safe to state that there are at least 200,000 in all, armed and, partially at least, equipped.

These robber bands are known by different names in different parts of China, the most famous being the *Hung Hu Tzu* or Red Beards which is the common name for the Manchurian bandit. Another well-known name is that of *Tufei* or robber.

In general these bands have a systematic organization, maintaining in population centers, agents with whom the leaders have excellent means of communication. From these agents information is obtained of the income and financial condition not only of individuals, but of entire communities,

who may be either selected for robbery or pillage or for large-scale blackmail operations.

Bandits have played an important part in many of China's wars, both foreign and domestic. The Japanese made use of them as partisan bands in the Russo-Japanese War. In civil warfare, army commanders frequently enter into alliances with bandit chiefs, and on other occasions many of the so-called armies are in reality made up of temporarily unified bandit organizations.

An opportunity recently presented itself for a rather extensive observation of one of these bands in Eastern Yunnan which it is believed is fairly typical. The strength of this band was approximately 170 of whom some 70 men were armed with edged weapons only. There were approximately twelve modern military rifles and carbines in the band, the rest of the bandits carrying converted muzzle loaders, caliber 60, Mauser single-shot, low velocity breech loaders, caliber 45, and Mauser tubular magazines, bolt action, low velocity repeating rifles, caliber 45, in about equal numbers. Ammunition consisted on an average, of some 40 rounds per man. There were but four pistols and revolvers; no machine-guns or automatic rifles.

The band was organized into a battalion of two companies of three platoons of three squads, of approximately eight men each. The officers consisted of a commander, chief of staff, executive officer, battalion commander, company commanders, platoon leaders, and squad leaders.

Most of the men were young, active Chinese, distinguished only by physical fitness and averaging probably about 23 years of age. There were, however, a number of boys under 16. All of the officers and a large proportion of the men had had military experience. The senior officers were all men in their thirties and the chief, executive, and chief of staff formed a sort of council for directing the band. Discipline was purely a personal matter. The only one whose orders were obeyed immediately and unquestioningly, was the chief. The rest of the officers when issuing orders, did so in a good-natured manner and were obeyed slackly. The outposts, however, were apparently keen and alert and battle discipline seemed very good.

In general, the tactics of the band in its operations, followed the ordinary principles of minor tactics. March discipline was poor and no effort was made to preserve military formation. This particular band did not seem to have any base for supplies or any general rendezvous. They lived on the country and traveled from place to place as the will of the commander seemed to dictate.

Horse Shows

First Cavalry Division Horse Show

By

Major STEPHEN M. WALMSLEY, Signal Corps

IN enumerating the advantages which a divisional organization presents to the Cavalry service, not the least is the opportunity it provides for mounted competitions, such as horse shows and polo tournaments. Competition stimulates interest, and interest stimulates hard, intelligent effort. The keener the competition, the keener the interest, and the greater the effort. An officer or enlisted man who works to carry off a ribbon in a squadron or regimental contest, will put forth even greater efforts, when he knows that he has to meet the competition which develops in a horse show, such as that staged by the First Cavalry Division at Fort Bliss, Texas on the 26th-28th and 30th of October, 1926. And what holds true for individuals, holds true for teams.

The polo tournament which was held during the two weeks leading up to and including the horse show dates, brought together eleven teams to struggle for the Senior and Junior championship cups. No other organization in the Army can bring together so many competitors. Four cavalry regiments, two machine gun squadrons, a battalion of horse artillery and the various staffs and special troops, provide an unequaled field from which to draw. The forty-five classes called out more than eight hundred entries and gave a place to every type of animal, vehicle and animal mastery that the military service requires, in addition to the always interesting ladies', children's and polo classes.

The show was the fifth which has been staged by the First Cavalry Division, and if any proof is needed of the improvement which the annual competition has brought about, it may be deduced from the remark of Major Richard Waring, O. R. C. from San Angelo, Texas. Major Waring has a national reputation as a horse show judge and had judged at former First Cavalry Division shows, but not at the two shows preceding the one held this year. In commenting on the performances he said, "I wouldn't know it was the same *army*." Commenting further he said, "I've sent jumpers to Madison Square Garden that couldn't perform with the horses here, and I only remember having judged two polo pony classes that equaled yours. One was on Long Island, and the other at Colorado Springs at the time of a big tournament."

As is almost always the case, the jumping events aroused the most

interest and brought out the most contestants. In the Enlisted Men's Jumping over a course of 8 jumps at 3 feet 6 inches, eleven of the twenty-nine entries made a perfect performance, and the second trial left three perfect performers to fight for the first places over the "touch and out" route.

The officers' Jumping class brought out seventy-eight entries but the added six inches on the jumps brought a much lower percentage of perfect performances on the initial trip, than did the enlisted men's class. Lieutenant Kendall, First Cavalry, riding *Chick*, a government mount finally beat *Bunkie*, a Fifth Cavalry horse with Lieutenant Carr up and the famous 8th Cavalry horse. *Peanuts*, Lieutenant Frierson, 8th Cavalry, up, by lasting the longest over the "touch and out" route. *Bunkie* and *Peanuts* were second and third respectively. In the Open Jumping which had 51 entries, none of



Pair Jumping

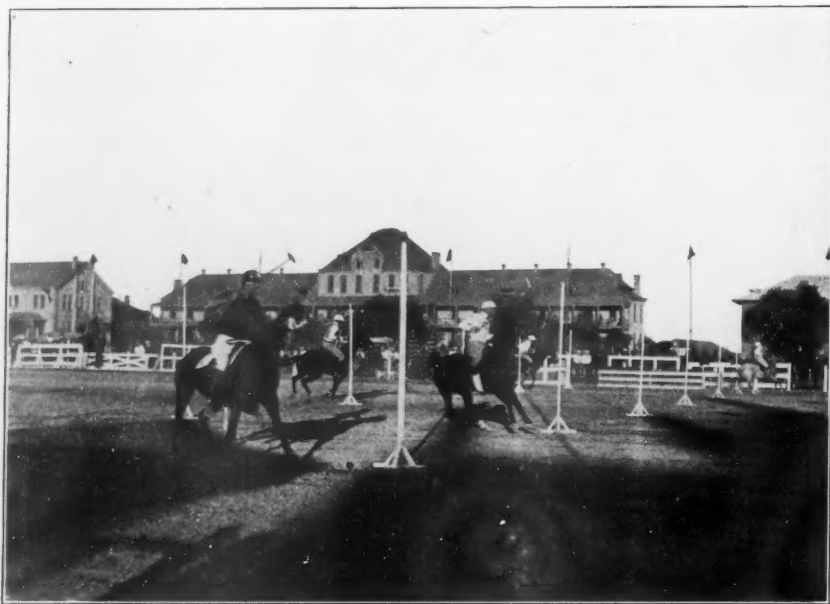
Captain Creed and Lieutenant Carr on *Big Ben* and *Pop Over*.

the horses named above were able to place, although they all tried. *Rebel*, another famous 8th Cavalry horse, Lieutenant Bennett up. *Squire*, Lieutenant True's mount, ridden by Captain Garrison, and *Storm King*, the private mount of his rider, Major A. L. P. Sands, F. A., carried away the ribbons in order.

But what *Peanuts* lost in these events, he made up for in others, winning the Handy Hunter class, the Three Man Hunt Team with the assistance of *Rebel* and *Woodrow*, the Pair of Jumpers with *Rebel*, and the Corinthian

class again with his veteran team-mates, *Woodrow* and *Rebel*.

Peanuts is entitled to more than passing notice. He was the outstanding horse of the show from the point winning standpoint and the four firsts, one second, and three thirds which he won in this show, raised to 112 the grand total of ribbons which he has accumulated in his eleven years in the military service. He came to the 8th Cavalry as a six year old remount in 1915, when that regiment was in the Big Bend district. Almost at once he began to demonstrate his aptitude for jumping, and although he is a scant 15-1 in height, he has cleared six feet eight inches in competition, and six feet six, several times. In addition to his high jumping ability, he has always been a careful and fearless jumper over all sorts of obstacles. Tables set with chairs and dishes, a man seated in a chair and holding a newspaper, a kneeling firing



Stake Race

line, another horse, all the trick jumps in the category, have been exactly to his taste. Nor is he simply a show ring horse. In 1919 when Mexican bandits had captured American aviators, *Peanuts* was in the rescue party and marched 287 miles in five days, on a half grain ration and no hay. And only second to *Peanuts* is the 8th Cavalry white horse *Rebel*, who has been a team-mate and stable mate to *Peanuts* in much of his career. *Rebel* joined the 8th Cavalry at the same time *Peanuts* did, and although his list of trophies is not as large as *Peanuts*'s, he is almost as steady a performer over the horse show

courses as is his more famous companion. He also accompanied *Peanuts* on the 287 mile march.

The only official notice taken of total scores by organization was in the contest for the new trophy presented by the 1st Cavalry Brigade to be competed for annually. The classes in which scoring for this trophy was considered, were limited to those in which the visiting organizations would be in a position to compete. They included the Remount Cup Contest (of which more later), Jumping events, Polo Pony classes, Officers' Chargers, and Enlisted Men's Mounts, and the Recruit Class, but excluded draft animals and vehicles. The trophy was won by the 8th Cavalry, with the Seventh second, and the Fifth third.



Escort Wagon Class

Entry of Service Troop, 8th Cavalry, awarded the red ribbon.

The most formidable individually owned group of contenders, was that entered by Lieutenant Frank L. Carr, 5th Cavalry. *Pluto*, *Mithridates*, (an imported French horse) *Seth*, and *Pop Over*, would show well in any company. Showing those four horses and a government horse, *Buddy*, Lieutenant Carr made twenty-three appearances in the ring, four more than his nearest competitor, Captain Creed, also of the Fifth. Lieutenant Carr's privately owned entries carried away 3 blue ribbons, 5 reds, and 1 yellow. In the polo pony class, Captain Bridges, V. C., 82nd F. A., was the high winner, carrying off

four blue ribbons with his string composed of *Hussie, Bob Bird, Scotty*, all excellent animals.

As a test of military horsemanship, the Remount Cup Contest was the outstanding event of the show. The contest was primarily for teams from the various organizations, but individual entries were permitted. The contest was continued over the three days of the show, the first day being allotted to showing the schooling of the animals in the ring, the second day to sixteen miles over roads, paths and across country, part at steeplechase speed, and part at marching gaits, and the third day to ring jumping. The first day's work permitted a possible 230 points, the second day's 1,050 points and the third day's 460 points. The contest was won by the 7th Cavalry with 4,857 points, and the highest individual score made by Captain C. E. Davis, 8th Cavalry, with 1,681.

In the ladies events, Mrs. Creed, wife of Captain Creed, 5th Cavalry, was high point winner with a blue in the Ladies Novice class, a blue in the Pair of Hacks, riding with her husband, a blue in the Ladies Jumping, and a red in the Ladies Saddle class.

As individual scorers, Lieutenant Frierson, 8th Cavalry, Captain Creed, 5th Cavalry and Captain Davis, 8th Cavalry, collected 22 points each on the 3-2-1 method of scoring. Captain Bridges, V. C., and Lieutenant Carr followed with 20 points each.

Leaving the more spectacular events, the classes for escort wagons, light wagons, and especially pack radio sections, were unusually excellent, the type and matching of animals, appearance and going, being extremely showy. Nor was the setting for the show neglected. The Howze Stadium, named for the late Major General Robert L. Howze, who played such an important part in the building of the First Cavalry Division, was put into first class shape with paint, bunting, pennants and flowers and presented as extremely attractive appearance.

Excellent attendance from the El Paso townspeople obtained throughout the show and at all the week-end polo games.

In the polo tournament, the 8th Cavalry made a clean sweep in both the Senior and Junior tournaments. The Senior team defeated the 82nd F. A. Bn. and the 5th Cavalry and the Juniors, defeated the Division Hq. and the 1st Cavalry. The 7th Cavalry which had been looked upon as a serious contender, was disrupted by the injury to Major Surles, the team captain, just before the tournament opened, and the Garry Owens were defeated in their first game against the Artillery. The First Cavalry Senior team won the Consolation Trophy.

Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show

THE annual Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, held this year on the afternoon of Friday, November 12th, and all day Saturday, November 13th, was generally conceded by all participants and spectators to be the most successful and largest attended horse show that has ever been given at Fort Oglethorpe. Colonel George C. Barnhardt, commanding the Sixth Cavalry at Fort Oglethorpe, Lieutenant Colonel



Colonel George C. Barnhardt, 6th Cavalry

Winner on *Miss Springtime* of classes—Horses suitable to become hunters, and horses suitable to become officers' mounts.

Harry N. Cootes who was charged with the preparations for the horse show, and the members of the various committees of officers and ladies who were delegated the various features of the preparations, are all highly elated and enthused over the results. The committees composed of enthusiastic members were kept up to untiring efforts during the weeks of preparations by the encouraging support and valuable advice given them by Colonel Barnhardt and Lieutenant Colonel Cootes, who both have the advantage of years of

experience in handling the many diversified details of preparing for, and staging horse shows, and who both possess personalities and characteristics that cause subordinates to loyally work together in the accomplishment of their particular tasks towards a common end.

As indicated by the name, the Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show is a combined civilian and military undertaking. While it is held at the Post and sponsored by the Sixth Cavalry, the purpose is to bring together at the show all the best horses owned by civilians, and members of the National Guard and Organized Reserves who reside in Chattanooga and vicinity, with the best horses of Fort Oglethorpe and neighboring posts. Of the various



Colonel Henry Dickinson, 109th Cav., Tenn. N. G.
Winner of Officers' Riding Class on *Buster*.

classes, some are open to all, others are open only to civilians, others are open only to members of the Organized Reserves and National Guard, and others are open only to members of the Regular Army, National Guard or Organized Reserves.

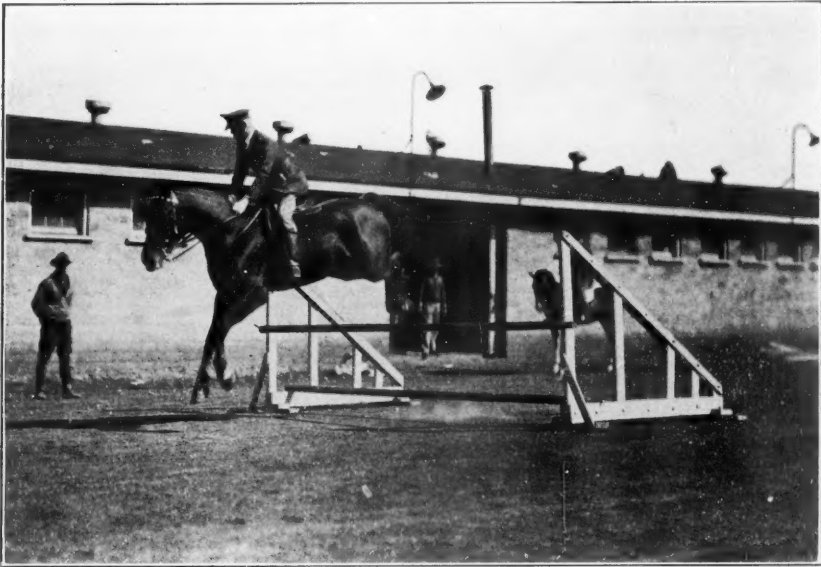
The forty classes included three gaited and five gaited saddle horse, pony, hunter, jumping, polo pony and military classes and a plantation class. An illustration of the idea of the show was the Sixth Cavalry challenge cup which was open only to members of the Lookout Mountain Hunt Club.

Thirty civilians each entered from one to three of their personal horses. In addition, twenty some members of the National Guard and Organized Reserves participated, some riding their own mounts and others mounts furnished by the Sixth Cavalry. Fort Benning, Georgia, was represented by

six officers who brought their own horses, the types of which are shown by the results of many of the classes in which they carried off several of the choice prizes.

The prizes, some cash, others cup or plate, some of which carried accompanying cash, varied in value for the different classes up to one hundred dollars for first, fifty dollars for second, and twenty-five dollars for third. The total value of the prizes was twenty-four hundred dollars.

The crowds from Chattanooga and vicinity that attended, filled all of the thirty-eight boxes, the grandstand and all parking spaces surrounding the ring.



Lt. Col. A. W. Bucholtz, 109th Cav., Tenn. N. G.

Colonel Henry C. Whitehead, Chief of the Remount Service, came from Washington to act as judge. He judged all classes except the five gaited and plantation classes, which were judged by Mr. L. A. Mitchell of Chattanooga. The judging was done most satisfactorily. The awards in military events follow:

Class 1, Three gaited saddle horse.—Won by *By Jingo*, Major A. Mitchell, V. C.; second, *Miss Michelina*, Capt. O. Porter; third, Capt. McClure, Inf.

Class 2, Three gaited saddle horses, ladies to ride.—Won by *Duna*, Mrs. C. H. Murphy; second, *Mickey*, Mrs. H. McE. Pendleton; third, *Diana*, Mrs. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.

Class 3, Three gaited saddle horse, gentleman to ride.—Won by Capt. McClure, Inf.; second, *Miss Michclena*, Captain O. Porter; third, *Mickey*, Major H. McE. Pendleton.

Class 4, Pairs of three gaited saddle horses, one horse to be ridden by lady and other

by gentleman.—Won by Mrs. Kimball and Colonel Cootes; second, Mrs. Donaldson and Lieut. Donaldson; third, Mrs. Murphy and Capt. Geer.

Class 8, Road hacks.—Won by *Mickey*, Mrs. H. McE. Pendleton; second, *By Jingo*, Major A. Mitchell, V. C.; third, *Diamond Dick*, Capt. E. N. Harmon.

Class 9, Championship three gaited saddle horses.—Won by Captain McClure, Inf.; second, Major Mitchell, V. C.

Class 13, Ponies, open to children under 15 years of age.—Won by *Riley*, Ernest Thomas, Jr.; second, *Red Dawn*, Miss Mildred Kimball; third, *Buddie*, Patsy Patton.

Class 14, Hunters, open to all.—Won by Lt. Moon, Inf.; second, Capt. Burress, Inf.; third, Capt. Whisner, Inf.

Class 15, Novice hunter.—Won by Lt. Ireland; second, *Storm King*, Major H. McE. Pendleton; third, *The Woodburner*, Capt. O. Porter.

Class 16, Horses suitable to become hunters.—Won by *Miss Springtime*, Colonel G. C. Barnhardt; second, Major Mitchel, V. C.; third, *Nice Horse*, Capt. O. Porter.



Lt. Col. H. N. Cootes and Mrs. R. H. Kimball

Winners of class—Pairs of three gaited Saddle Horses.

Class 17, Jumping over eight jumps, not exceeding four feet.—Won by *Boney*, Sgt. Williams, Troop C; second, Capt. Burress, Inf.; third, Capt. Wise, Inf.

Class 19, Jumping, obstacles not exceeding 3 feet 6 inches, open only to ladies.—Won by *Boney*, Mrs. C. H. Murphy; second, *Buddy*, Mrs. J. B. Wise, Jr.; third, *Diana*, Mrs. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.

Class 20, Touch and out jumping.—Won by *Boney*, Sgt. Williams, Troop C; second, *Missouri*, Lt. H. A. Boone, third, Capt. McClure, Inf.

Class 21, Pair Jumping.—Won by Corp. Cavalho, Hqrs. Troop and Sgt. Williams, Troop C; second, Captains Wise and Whisner, Inf.; third, Captains McClure and Burress, Inf.

Class 22, Garnet Andrews Challenge Cup.—Won by *Storm King*, Mrs. H. McE. Pendleton; second, *Boney*, Mrs. C. H. Murphy; third, *Diana*, Mrs. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.

Class 24, Sweepstakes, over eight jumps not exceeding 4 feet.—Won by Sergt. Williams, Troop C; second, 1st Sergt. Townsend, Troop B; third, Lt. Moon, Inf.

Class 26, Polo ponies.—Won by *Lady*, Lt. R. E. Ireland; second, Capt. Burress, Inf.; third, *Sugar*, Lt. H. T. Sutton.

Class 27, Ponies suitable for polo.—Won by *Diamond Dick*, Capt. E. N. Harmon; second, *West Wind*, Lt. R. E. Ireland; third, *Diana*, Lt. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.

Class 28, Pony suitable to become polo pony, five years and under.—Won by *Cole*, Capt. O. Porter; second, *Diana*, Lt. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.; third, *Twinkle*, Lt. Donaldson.

Class 29, Bending Race.—Won by Lt. Moon, Inf.; second, Capt. Whisner, Inf.; third, Capt. Burres, Inf.

Class 30, Officers' chargers.—Won by Capt. McClure, Inf.; second, Major Smith, Cav.; third, Capt. M. H. Patton.

Class 31, Horses suitable to become officers' mounts.—Won by *Miss Springtime*, Colonel G. C. Barnhardt; second, *The Woodburner*, Capt. O. Porter; third, *Miss Michelena*, Capt. Porter.

Class 32, Officers' riding Class.—Won by Colonel Henry Dickinson, 109th Cavalry; second, Major Frazier, 317th F. A.

Class 33, Best trained cavalry mount.—Won by *Mickey*, 1st Sergt. Townsend, Troop B; second, *Mickey*, Sergt. Eggert, Troop E; third, *Rajah*, Sergt. McCaslin, Troop B.

Class 34, Cavalry remount.—Won by *Pony*, Corpl. E. J. Cole, Troop G; second, *Hogan*, Sergt. Lee Corum, Troop F; third, *Toney*, Corpl. Able, Troop B.

Class 35, Best turned out trooper's mount.—Won by *Woodrow*, Corpl. O. F. Howard, Troop F; second, *Sadie*, Pvt. K. Carver, Troop F; third, *Skeeball*, Corpl. Freeman, Troop C.

Class 36, Enlisted men's jumping.—Won by Corpl. Patterson, Troop E; second, *Garyon*, Corpl. Carvalho, Hwrs. Troop; third, *Boney*, Sergt. Williams, Troop C.

Class 37, Pair jumping, open to enlisted men only.—Won by Pvt. Bonds and Corpl. Carvalho, Hqrs. Troop; second, Sergt. Williams and 1st Sergt. Thomas, Service Troop; third, Corpl. Howard and Pvt. Roberts, Troop F.

Class 38, Recruit Riding Competition.—Won by *Betty*, Pvt. Crawford, Troop E; second, *Stupid*, Pvt. Koontz, Troop C; third, *Buddy*, Pvt. Vance, Troop G.

Class 40, Jumping for officers of 63d Cavalry Division riding class.—Won by 1st Lt. Anderson, 463d F. A. Bn.; second, Corpl. Lattimore, 317th F. A.; third, Corpl. Meek, 503d Cav. Sq.



ARMY TEAM AT FALL HORSE SHOWS

FOR the second successive season, the Army was represented on the Fall Circuit of Horse Shows by a team that attended the New York State Fair and Horse Show at Syracuse, New York and the Rochester Exposition and Horse Show at Rochester, New York, extending over a period from August 30th to September 11th.

An account of these shows would be incomplete without a foreword as to the men and animals that made up the team, and of their training in preparation for the trip.

On July 10, the Army team, composed of Captain F. H. Waters, Captain W. B. Bradford, and Lieutenant W. H. W. Reinburg, all Cavalry and Captains W. H. McMahon and W. H. Colbern, Field Artillery, commenced active training at Fort Riley, Kansas. Thirty horses comprised the original number,

from which the following eighteen were selected: *Nigra*, blk. m. a.; *Jacksnipe*, br. g. a.; *Proctor*, b. g. a.; *Blackboy*, blk. g. a.; *Mr. Green*, ch. g. a.; *Miss America*, b. m. a.; *Anita*, b. m. eight; *Logical*, ch. m. a.; *Buckaroo*, br. g. a.; *St. Paul*, b. g. eight; *Joe Aleshire*, b. g. seven; *Babe Wartham*, b. g. seven; *Dick Waring*, b. g. eight; *Fred Harvey*, b. g. four; *Hindustan*, ch. g. five; *Dick*, b. g. a.; *Joffre*, b. g. a.; and *Felsenter*, ch. g. six. Of these, *Nigra*, *Jacksnipe*, *Practor*, *Blackboy*, *Miss America*, *Dick*, *Buckaroo*, and *Joffre* are old competitors, and their names are familiar to most cavalymen. The others are young horses, mostly by Remount stallions, halfbred or better. *Joe Aleshire* is the only one of other than thoroughbred sire, he being a thoroughbred—saddle cross. *Logical* and *Felsenter* are thoroughbreds. The latter is a private mount, having been purchased in Germany by Lieutenant Reinburg.



The Cavalry School Team

The training schedule included jumping the horses under stripped saddle and under weight, galloping, and working up and down steep grades. Altogether the schedule was such that, at the time of shipment, both horses and men were in excellent condition. A further benefit was derived from the arrival of the horses at the first show five days previous to opening.

On arrival at Syracuse, the horses were given gentle exercise, some use

being made of the arena for the purpose of accustoming them to the surroundings.

The Syracuse show was held at night in the Coliseum. The arrangements were splendid, and the prizes excellently arranged. However, because the fairgrounds were some distance from the city, and the majority of the crowds attended the daylight events only, the show was rather poorly attended by the public. The jumps at this show were the usual post and rail and brush fences, from which special courses were constructed.

The performances of the team at the Syracuse show were very satisfactory, the following results being attained: *Mr. Green*, first, novice jumping class; *Buckaroo*, first, open jumping class; *Dick*, first, five foot class; *Mr. Green* and *Buckaroo*, first, Sesqui-Centennial Plate; *Nigra*, first, jumping class and triple bar class; *Blackboy* and *Buckaroo*, placed, Jumper Stake; *Proctor*, third, Hunter Stake.

All military classes were clean sweeps, *Hindustan* being the outstanding charger. A total of forty ribbons were won at this show.

The Rochester show was a daylight affair, held outside in a very beautiful show ring, and attended daily by thousands. A permanent and varied course had been constructed; special mention should be made of the five foot course, which was extremely difficult. A triple bar, bank jump, and water jump were included in every class.

In addition, the competition at this show was keener than at Syracuse, and *Buckaroo*, one of the best performers in the string, refused absolutely to go in any of his classes. *Nigra*, however, won two open jumping events; *Proctor* and *St. Paul* won the Pair of Hunters with *Mr. Green* and *Anita* second; *Dick* won the pen jump with *Proctor* second; *Jacksnipe* staged a comeback and was second to *Nigra* in the classes that she won. The team of three jumpers, *Nigra*, *Jacksnipe*, and *Blackboy*, won their class handily. *Proctor* won the charger class, was second in the middleweight class, and was reserve to the champion (middleweight hunters). A number of other seconds and thirds were won.

The generosity of Major C. L. Scott of the Remount Service in lending *Nigra*, a sensation in 1923 and of Colonel Pierre Lorillard, Jr., in lending *Hindustan* and *Buckaroo* was greatly appreciated, and assisted materially in the success of the team.

On the return trip to Fort Riley, *Logical* was hurt in the car and is out for the rest of the season.

THE NATIONAL HORSE SHOW

THE recent National Horse Show was unique by reason of the international aspect given to it by the unusually large number of competitors from foreign countries. Canada, France, Poland, Spain, Belgium, and Holland,

were each represented by a team of three officers who participated in both individual and team events. Our service was represented by teams from the Cavalry School and the Third Cavalry, with individual entries from other

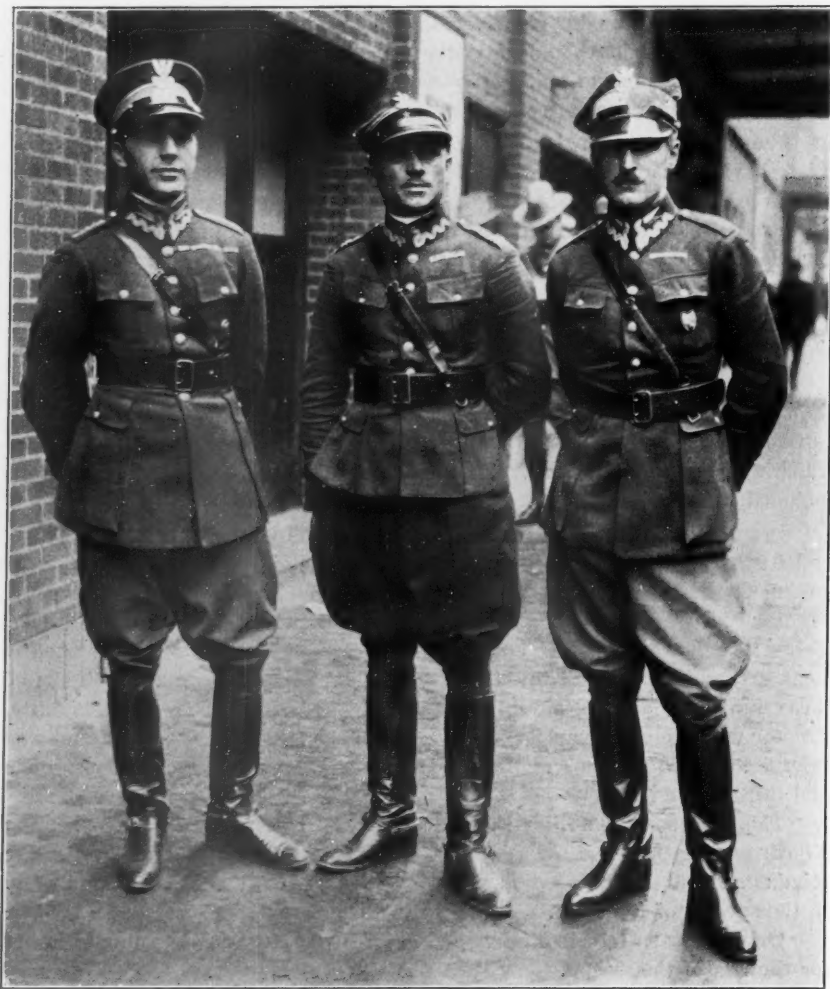


Photo by International News Reel Corp.

The Polish Team at the National Horse Show

Left to right, Capt. Adam Krolkiewicz, Maj. Michael Toczek, and Lieut. Kasmir Szosland. organizations of the Regular Army, National Guard, and Organized Reserves.

Results in classes having military entries follow:

International Military Trophy. Won by the Polish team; 2d, the French team; 3d,

the Belgian team.

Jumping for Officers. Won by *Laitue*, Lieut. G. J. deFollongue, France; 2d, *Black Prince*, Captain S. C. Tate, Canada; 3d, *Jacek*, Captain Adam Krolikiewicz, Poland; 4th, *Keepsake*, Lieut. J. Misonne, Belgium.

Pair Jumping for Officers only—Plaza Hotel Cup. Won by *Nigra* and *St. Paul*, Captains F. H. Waters and N. J. McMahon, Cavalry School; 2d, *Nacelle* and *Reveuse*, Lieuts. Y. M. P. Fremenville and G. J. deFollongue, France; 3d *Dick* and *Black Boy*, Lieut. W. H. W. Reinburg and Capt. W. B. Bradford, Cavalry School; 4th, *Brown Boy* and *Flash*, Lieut. P. McD. Robinett and Captain J. G. Boykin, 3d Cavalry.

Class 169—Jumpers, (first division). 2d, *Zwart Griet*, Capt. J. M. de Kruijff, Holland; 4th, *Roland*, Capt. de Kruijff.



Photo by International News Reel Corp.

The French Team at the National Horse Show

Left to right, Lieut. Clave, Lieut. de Fremenville, and Lieut. de Follongue.

Class 169—Jumpers, (second division). Won by *Keepsake*, Lieut. J. Misonne, Belgium; 2d, *Hamlet*, Major M. Tocek, Poland; 3d, *Hands Up*, Capt. J. Mesmuckers, Belgium; 4th, *Acrobat*, Lieut. J. de Brabandere, Belgium.

Class 170—Jumpers (first division). Won by *Black Boy*, Cavalry School; 2d, *Gamin*, Capt. C. H. Labouchere, Holland.

Class 170—Jumpers (second division). Won by *Nacelle*, Lieut. Y. M. P. Fremenville, France; 2d, *Jacek*, Capt. Adam Krolikiewicz, Poland; 3d, *Faucoryt*, Major M. Tocek, Poland.

Squadron A Challenge Cup. Won by *Maudelia*, Captain N. J. McMahon, Cavalry School; reserve, *Anita*, Captain W. B. Bradford, Cavalry School.

Remount Service Cup. Won by *Pair II*, Lieut. Y. M. P. Fremenville, France; 2d, *Reveuse*, Lieut. G. J. de Follongue, France; 3d, *Ringleidt*, Lieut. Casimir Szosland, Poland; 4th, *Valamero*, Capt. Sr. Marques de los Frujillos, Spain.

Officers' Chargers, DuPont Cup. Won by *Gamin*, Capt. C. H. Labouchere, Holland; 2d, *Irish Crystal*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Pathfinder*, Remount Service; 4th, *Hindustan*, Cavalry School.

The Bowman Challenge Cup, Officers' Chargers (not open to officers of foreign armies). Won by *Proctor*, Cavalry School; 2d, *Felsenter*, Lieut. W. H. W. Reinburg.

Qualified Hunters (to be ridden by ladies). 4th, *Proctor*, Cavalry School.

Horses suitable to become Hunters. 4th, *Hindustan*, Cavalry School.

Hunters or Jumpers over five foot Jumps. Won by *Laitue*, Lieut. G. J. de Follongue, France; 2d, *Hands Up*, Capt. G. Mesmackers, Belgium; 3d, *Dick*, Cavalry School; 4th, *Veronique*, Lieut. G. de Brabandere, Belgium.

Horses suitable to become Light Weight Hunters. 3d, *Felsenter*, Cavalry School; 4th, *Hindustan*, Cavalry School.

\$1,000 Jumper Stake. 4th, *Unigeno*, Captain Adam Krolkiewicz, Poland.

Heavy Weight Polo Mounts (mares suitable for breeding polo ponies). Won by *Quinnie*, U. S. M. A.; 2d, *Virginia*, Captain J. S. Tate, 16th F. A.; 3d, *La Paloma*, Lt. M. E. Jones.

Three Hunters or Jumpers. Won by Cavalry School; 3d, Cavalry School; 4th, French team.

Teams of Three Jumpers (Westchester Challenge Cup). 2d, Cavalry School Team; 3d, Cavalry School team.

Light Weight Polo Mounts (ridden by officers). Won by *P. D. Q.*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 2d, *Miss Kitten*, Major A. R. Chaffee, 3d Cav; 3d, *Belle of New York*, Capt. J. H. Mulcahy, Res.; 4th, *Contessa*, U. S. M. A.

Heavy Weight Polo Mounts (ridden by officers). Won by *Carry the News*, Capt. J. S. Tate, 16th F. A.; 2d, *Quinnie*, U. S. M. A.; 3d, *La Paloma*, Lt. M. E. Jones, Cav. 4th, *Dusty*, Capt. Frank P. Lum.

Polo Mounts up to Carrying 190 pounds. 4th, *Carry the News*, Capt. J. S. Tate, 16th F. A.

Troopers Mounts. Won by *Peggy*, 3d Cavalry; 2d, *Grey Lady*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Miss G*, Westfield Troop Association; 4th, *Applejack*, 3d Cav.

Troopers Mounts (actually used by troopers). Won by *Peggy*, 3d Cav.; 2d, *Cautious*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Grey Lady*, N. J. N. G.; 4th, *Applejack*, 3d Cav.

Triple Bar Class—3d, *Firejump*, Capt. J. H. Irving, 3d Cav.



The National Guard

Notes on Visits to National Guard Cavalry Camps

By

Lieut. Colonel A. F. COMMISKEY, Cavalry

DUE to the limiting factors, time and money, my visits to National Guard cavalry organizations during the last field training season, were restricted to Rhode Island, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey.

Rhode Island

Having called upon the Adjutant General of Rhode Island in Providence, he took me in his motor car to the camp of 1st Squadron, Rhode Island Cavalry, which was located in a field, near a stream, a short day's march south of Providence, the squadron's home station. This camp was the last overnight stop of the squadron which was making a seven days' march as a part of its summer training, the first half of the training period having been spent in the training camp at Quonset Point.

The horses were standing on the picket lines, having been groomed and fed. Stable sergeants and farriers were attending to the usual bumps and bruises incident to marching, and the shoeing was being looked over. It was apparent that the care of animals was not being neglected and that they were being looked after in a very satisfactory manner.

The men had finished setting up their shelter tents and were occupied with the usual tasks which must be gone through with on going into camp; such as arranging the interior of the tent, cleaning arms and saddle equipment, airing the saddle blankets, etc.

The cooks and kitchen police were busy preparing the evening meal. The whole camp created the impression of having things well organized. Everybody seemed to have learned what his particular duties were, and was going about doing his part without confusion. It all indicated that the previous two week's training had, as to fundamentals, been thorough. This impression of efficiency in basic training was further strengthened the next day when I had a chance to see the squadron finishing its march at the Armory in Providence.

I believe that the training received on a properly conducted march, where advantage is taken of the many opportunities for small tactical problems in security, etc., is one of the best uses to which at least part of the two week's field training, can be put.

There is a story in which an orchestra leader was forced to apply for a volunteer to play a violin in place of his usual violinist who, at the last minute had failed to appear. A volunteer came forward saying he was willing to do what he could to help out. However, when asked if he could play the violin, he answered: "I don't know whether I can play or not; I've never tried, but I'm willing to try it now."

Marching is perhaps the most necessary preliminary to combat. Without practice, it is most probable that proficiency in this very important part of training, will be lacking. The best way to learn to march is to march.

Two outstanding difficulties were met with during the march made by the Rhode Island Cavalry. The first was a lack of suitable mounts. The hired horses were of poor quality and unsuited for cavalry service. In this highly industrialized section of the country, suitable horses for cavalry purposes are scarce. It is almost impossible to procure them locally, and it does not pay a contractor to bring horses from the West for the short period he can hire them to the National Guard, and for the very moderate rate of hire allowed by the government. The second outstanding difficulty was the lack of proper animal drawn transportation. If the present scheme, of issuing to each troop of National Guard cavalry one spring wagon, is carried out, this difficulty will disappear.

From an organization standpoint, an improvement is possible. The 110th Massachusetts Cavalry at present consists of a regiment, less one squadron. Its complete organization has been arrested by the present limitations imposed by the Federal Government as to further increases in the National Guard. The squadron of the Rhode Island Cavalry is a separate squadron. Its station is about forty miles distant from that of the 110th Massachusetts Cavalry. From the mobilization standpoint, especially under the present plans, it would be a distinct advantage to make the separate Rhode Island Squadron, a part of the 110th Massachusetts Cavalry, thus completing the regiment and absorbing a squadron not a part of any division or brigade as at present organized. In this change, there are many other advantages, too obvious to mention.

Pennsylvania

On reaching Mt. Gretna, Pa. I found the entire 52d Cavalry Brigade in camp there. The reservation, due to its varied terrain, has many advantages as a cavalry training ground. Its natural advantages have been enhanced by carefully planned camp and training facilities of many kinds. Unfortunately, the best of plans could not fortell the weather. There were but three clear days during the cavalry encampment of last summer. In spite of this disadvantage, the training schedule was carried out as pre-arranged. This was a severe test of morale, especially that of the enlisted personnel. However, the ankle deep mud, wet clothes, and damp bedding, deeply muddy picket lines, which made grooming a feat in balancing, in addition to the

usual difficulties pertaining to the job, were all taken as part of the game, and were not permitted to interfere with the task in hand: the training of the Brigade. The Brigade showed the stuff of which it is composed. An atmosphere of earnestness and business-like efficiency pervaded the camp. It extended from the Commanding General's tent to the stable sergeants' shacks at the end of the picket lines. Order, system and discipline were everywhere doing their work.

In common with other mounted organizations, the hired horse problem was apparently not yet satisfactorily solved. Satisfactory cavalry horses again seemed hard to procure under the conditions imposed. I think it may be taken as a fundamentally sound statement that nothing in the way of sudden appropriations or legislation, can produce a five year old horse in less than five years. During these necessary five years of development, the animal must be fed and cared for. If we are to have mobile troops, cavalry, we must have horses, and horses of the proper kind. The team of a trained man on a trained horse, is essential in good cavalry. In order to have available when necessary, the proper kind of horses in sufficient numbers, it is necessary to in some manner, make it worth the farmer's and the ranchman's expense and time in raising them.

One of the present outstanding deficiencies common to all National Guard cavalry, is the lack of machine rifles and the Phillips packs on which to carry them and their ammunition. It is hoped that these can be supplied in the near future. Both for training purposes and as an important part of the mobile fire power of the cavalry, they are necessary. When they are received, the present unsatisfactory automatic rifle and its makeshift carrier can be done away with.

Among the training facilities at Mount Gretna, I was especially interested in a very clever system of target pits connected by telephone to a central control point. This was the combat firing range. It made possible the working out of most practical problems in combat firing for rifle, automatic rifle, and machine gun.

The entire 52d Brigade held a mounted review on the last day in camp. Due to the still muddy condition of the field, rapid gaits were not attempted. The appearance of the Brigade at this review was most creditable.

It was interesting to note while at Camp Gretna that seventy-two Reserve cavalry officers were taking their summer training with the National Guard. The Reserve officers were enthusiastic about the training received. They varied in rank from colonels to lieutenants.

New Jersey

The 102d Cavalry, New Jersey National Guard, held its summer camp at Sea Girt, N. J. The camp with the available surrounding country and the rifle range, makes it possible to train a regiment in the basic principles of

cavalry. Full advantage was taken during the last field training period, of the surrounding country for tactical problems. I had an opportunity to accompany the regiment on an outpost problem. The whole thing was extremely well done. The Regiment reported promptly at the hour set. Uniform and equipment were exactly as ordered. Both staff and line officers understood what they were about to do. The enlisted personnel had been instructed so that they also knew what was to be done and what their part in the problem was; hence they were interested from the beginning and the interest was sustained throughout the problem. Naturally it followed; the work was well done.

Although the hired horses are one of the problems of this organization in common with the rest of the National Guard cavalry, they seemed to have come more nearly to a satisfactory solution of it than the other organizations I have seen. They had better horses, better cared for, and better ridden than is usual. The arms were in excellent condition and the general appearance of the regiment and its camp, were in all respects a credit to the organization. The whole outfit reflected a well commanded, well instructed regiment under discipline which promoted, rather than destroyed, esprit. As to equipment, this organization needs, as do the other National Guard cavalry regiments, the machine rifle and the Phillips packs on which to carry it.

Conclusions

To sum up:—I found the National Guard cavalry which I had a chance to observe last summer, composed of excellent personnel, both commissioned and enlisted, who were earnestly and intelligently working toward fulfilling to their utmost ability, the task assigned them under the National Defense Act. Due to the limited time available for training, to the large turn-over in personnel, and to limited facilities for training, a definite limit is necessarily imposed upon the National Guard in time of peace in the extent to which anything but basic training can be satisfactorily carried. Within these limits great progress is being made. The influence of the Cavalry School at Fort Riley is everywhere apparent in this progress. It reaches the National Guard Cavalry through many channels, most important of which are, National Guard officers who return for duty with their organizations after having taken the National Guard Officers' course at Fort Riley; instructors who are graduates of the Cavalry School; and correspondence schools which are maintained at Fort Riley.

The Organized Reserves

Notes on a Reserve Training Camp

By

Lieutenant CLAUDE F. BAKER, 324th Cavalry

THE 1926 training camp for officers of the 324th Cavalry occupied two weeks during July 4th to 18th. The training occurred at Ft. D. A. Russell, at Gilchrist's Ranch and at Camp Richard W. Young, all of these places being in the vicinity of Cheyenne, Wyoming. Gilchrist's Ranch is approximately 14 miles northwesterly from Ft. D. A. Russell, and Camp Young in the same general direction, about 18 miles farther.

During the training, the 324th officers were given tactical command of the 13th Cavalry for ten days of field maneuvers, involving a real war problem carefully considered, executed and criticized; and the usual orders, both executive and administrative, were timely issued. Staff maps, journals and reports were required and are a part of the permanent files pertaining to the camp. It was the unqualified opinion of all officers in attendance, that the two weeks involved were the most instructive, both practically and theoretically, of any two weeks in their army experience. As was commonly expressed by these officers during the closing days:—"This has been a real camp!"

Active service commenced July 4, 1926.

A large proportion of the main body of officers attending the camp, entrained at Salt Lake City at one o'clock in the afternoon of a gloriously hot Fourth. The temperature at that time and place was officially recorded as 110 degrees Fahrenheit; and of the officers in uniform, bidding their ladies fond farewells, several degrees higher. It was remarked how well acquainted several of these officers were with ladies at the station, and also with ladies on the train. It is difficult to judge whether or not this diversified affectionate acquaintance is individual with the 324th Regiment. However, considerable confusion attended the entraining, because the Adjutant had given several officers' reservations to lady friends, and later refused his military brethren introductions to these friends. This did not disturb the dental officer who was interested solely in the location of the enemy.

On the train, Lieutenant Rosenberg inspected carefully the polish on his new boots, and stood a round of drinks in the buffet car.

At Ogden, at 2:15 p. m. our dental officer inadvertently exchanged his official tool equipment for that of a railroad mechanic, and at camp later was surprised to find that he had brought with him the following articles:—one

hammer, 2 cold chisels, 1 small pliers, 3 pincers (large), and some miscellaneous steel.

The writer retired early and can give no further information until detraining at Cheyenne the next morning at 5:05. Only two officers detrained immediately on arrival, and the conductor was required to hold the train about 40 minutes for the others to be awakened and dress. The first words spoken by the dental officer that morning was an inquiry as to the probable position of the enemy.

Captain Irvin welcomed the detachment on behalf of the 13th. Preparations were in readiness for the short journey to the Fort, and adequate quarters had been prepared for use.

The morning of the 5th was spent in arranging quarters and baggage, undergoing hospital examination, and assembling equipment. Orderlies reported from time to time and assisted greatly in preparations for the trip to camp, which was scheduled to commence the following day. Visits were made to headquarters where Colonel Richmond outlined the prospective training in detail, and the reservists were assigned in tactical command of the 13th with Lt. Colonel Frederic Jorgensen, of Salt Lake City, Utah, commanding, and Lt. Colonel Hartwell Palmer, of Portland, Oregon, Executive Officer, 162nd Cavalry Brigade, attached.

That evening in quarters maps were inspected, led by Lt. Rosenberg. The dental officer inquired as to the position of the enemy.

The next morning, July 6th, Chaplain Brown arrived in good spirits, and was introduced into a blue haze where camp equipment was being assembled against time. The chaplain admitted the language was fully equal to that resulting from a forced evacuation of a Y. M. C. A. in the good old days in France. During the morning the visitors were introduced to their horses; and the horses eyed their riders, and the riders eyed their horses, with skeptical speculation.

Early in the afternoon, the 13th, and reserve officers, marched from Ft. D. A. Russell to Gilchrist's Ranch. The weather was excellent for men and horses, damp and cool, and the march was thoroughly enjoyed. A small, but enthusiastic, delegation of dogs accompanied the movement with zeal. Men, horses and equipment were in proper condition for all purposes. The length of march was variously estimated by reservists from twelve to forty miles. Later it was conceded that the lower estimate was more nearly correct.

Gilchrist's Ranch afforded a good camp site with excellent water available. Here the reserve officers secured practical knowledge of making and breaking camp and necessary preparations for the night, with an outpost established and explained on the ground.

It was early noted that some of the saddles selected by the officers were hardly adequate to the situation. Pulley equipment was necessary to jerk Lieutenant Clifford from his saddle. (Saddle seat 10.5 inches). Several

officers moved about like the Class of '66 in search of orderlies. The evening was damp and cold. The official sleeping temperature was confidently reported to be around zero.

The following morning, July 7th, the dental officer inquired as to the enemy's position; and Lieutenant Clifford omitting underwear, commandeered a shoe horn in order to get into saddle. Several reservists eased themselves into the saddle with an anguished delicacy.

During the march from the Ranch to Camp Young it was noted that the way was steadily up grade, and in some places the route was steep. At the worst part of the way, the main body dismounted and led out up approximately 7 miles of mountain side at the rate of 5.5 miles per hour. This distance and rate were approximated by members of the reserve staff, whose calculations might have been as uneven as their breathing.

The official time of arriving at Camp Young was 11:30 A. M. The dental officer immediately made a personal reconnaissance in a vain attempt to discover the enemy. The day was threatening, and several tents were hurriedly pitched in the teeth of an imminent storm. There was some hurried work with shovel and pick doing necessary trenching about the tents and the rain arrived in a near cloudburst. Fortunately the tents held. At this time a certain senior officer lost his orderly, his tent, and his mess equipment. This officer took the official precipitation data of 3.7 inches of rainfall. Afternoon: falling temperature. Evening: falling temperature. Night: falling temperature. About morning the temperature hit bottom.

July 8th, the position of the enemy was determined on all maps excepting that of the dental officer. There was an hour or so spent in riding and outpost reconnaissance, and in the afternoon there was an opportunity afforded each reservist to make his outpost plans and dispositions in detail.

July 9th there was made a most spirited reconnaissance of the enemy position. Several staff officers of the reserve accompanied by the dental officer rode through marshes and underbrush with care as to sufficient cover, to the neighborhood of the enemy's left flank. Thereupon the dental officer emerged suddenly from cover to high ground in the open, and an enemy patrol close by shot at him several times.

"What was that?" inquired the dental officer.

The joint and several answers of his compatriots cannot be reproduced here. The dental officer had found the enemy.

During the day one of the junior reservists prepared an article for the Salt Lake papers laudatory of sparkling streams, sportive trout and the excellence of the natural bathing facilities at camp. The writer, misled as to the comforts of stream bathing, took a hurried bath in the stream over the hill from the camp, and accurately determined the temperature of liquid air, if not absolute zero. A trooper who watched the bath shivered so hard he became a blur on the horizon. This trooper subsequently required medical attention.

July 10th, there was an informal beard inspection. Considerable cursory argument developed the merits of two methods of handling beards: the one school favored parting in the middle and draping evenly over the shoulders, the other school was all for braiding. There seemed to be a more official suggestion current in favor of shaving. This last suggestion was uniformly adopted.

In the afternoon there was a horse show for enlisted men with cash prizes. The competition was spirited, and the horse show was attended by a good-sized audience.

July 11th, being Sunday, the Chaplain made use of the sunny morning to have open air services. These services were attended by all who were without acquaintances in nearby towns, and the band furnished appropriate music. The Chaplain gave an interesting sermon, and his hearers were without envy for the officers who returned in the evening with reminiscent expressions.

Sunday evening a regimental smoker was held. There were several short addresses, splendid music, and various clever vaudeville numbers. Lieutenant Rosenberg was in good form, and mentioned that he had been around campfires so much that he smelled like a smoked ham. All the numbers were well received. It was an enjoyable evening to everyone, and was one of the many things during the camp that proved the splendid morale existing in the 13th Cavalry.

The following three days, July 12th, 13th and 14th were in many respects the most interesting days of the camp. During these days actual attacks of the enemy position were had in details: the first attack exemplifying a plan of enveloping the enemy's left, and the second attack executing a plan of enveloping the enemy's right. On the 14th it was assumed that the enemy cavalry regiment had been defeated, and the necessary orders were given in the field for the occupation of Tie City Pass, and these orders were immediately executed.

On July 15th the regiment broke camp and returned to Ft. D. A. Russell by the more usual route of travel, an approximate distance of 35 miles, arriving in good order at the Fort in the early afternoon. It was an inspiring sight to see the regiment in full march order crossing the green rolling hills of Eastern Wyoming on the return. The countryside was unusually attractive; there had been a sufficiency of rain; and the hills were covered with rank green, and the valleys were colored with a variety of wild flowers. Any reservist, part of that movement, was indeed insensate, who was not enthused with the cavalry service and the generous hospitality of the officers and men of the 13th.

An uncharitable outsider, making too minute an inspection on the regiment's arrival might have been reminded of Mark Twain's pilgrim in the Holy land, who, after a long journey without bathing or change of clothing, was not considered fit for a drawing room. Razors, soap and water were put

to the best of uses, and dinner that evening at the Officers' Club was a much appreciated event.

July 16th was employed checking in issued equipment, securing travel vouchers and pay, and in the evening the reservists were entertained by the officers of the 13th at a ball. The ball was attended by everyone and was thoroughly enjoyed. It is not impossible to assume that some of the guests are still dancing. The ball was in lively progress when the historian took his train some hours after midnight.

Since the camp a great many expressions have been received from the reservists who attended, and it is the unanimous opinion of all that the two weeks could not have been spent more beneficially. Incidentally one of the larger reservists lost five inches of unnecessary waist line, and is anticipating already the results of another two weeks of camp life in the summer of 1927.

It is always gratifying to recall pleasant memories and experiences, especially where there is involved the making of new friends under circumstances of accomplishment together. It would be impossible to give here in detail the many courtesies and acts of kindness extended the visitors by Colonel H. R. Richmond, and the officers and men of the 13th Cavalry. It is only necessary to say that the reservists were received, instructed and entertained by hospitable gentlemen and capable officers.

Among other things the schedule provided for instruction in the organization and tactical employment of the various elements of the regiment, in halting for the night, in outposts, in advance guard scouting and patrolling, in reconnaissance detachments, in tactical dispositions for an advance, in communication and supply, in command and staff, in march discipline, in general and special situations including estimates, in march and administrative orders, in security, in securing and disseminating information as to the enemy and field reports, in guard duty and orders, in estimating the situation with respect to attack and preparing a detailed plan of action, in actual orders in the field, in actual attack, in pursuit and occupation of position, in camp policing and evacuation, and the care of animals and stable management.

63RD CAVALRY DIVISION

During the period, October 1, 1926 to June 30, 1927, the Division will be busily engaged carrying out the provisions of an inactive duty training program. Many valuable forms of instruction are offered to members of the Division, including Semi-Monthly Tactical Schools, Correspondence Courses and equitation classes. To date the enrollments for the different courses have been very satisfactory. The present enrollment for the correspondence courses is 128 as compared to a maximum of 69 for the 1925-26 school year.

The Annual Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show, an elaborate affair, embracing forty different classes, both civilian and military, was held at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, on November 12th and 13th. The weather was ideal and quite a crowd witnessed the show. Among the classes were two for members of the equitation class conducted by these headquarters. One a jumping class and the other to determine the best all-round rider.

In the jumping class the following won places: 1st Lt. R. C. Anderson, 463rd F. A. Bn., first; Corporal D. S. Latimore, 317th F. A., second; Corporal Fleming Meeks, 503rd Cavalry Squadron, third.

In the second event, Colonel Henry Dickinson, 109th Cavalry, took first; Major J. B. Frazier, Jr., 317th F. A., second; and Corporal D. S. Latimore, 317th F. A., third.

Approximately twelve officers participated in each of these events.

These Annual shows do much to foster interest in horses and riding as is evidenced by the number of riding clubs being organized and the increasing number of civilians who compete in the yearly shows.

Major General Johnson Hagood, Commanding the Fourth Corps Area, was the guest of honor at a dinner given by the Reserve Officers' Association of Chattanooga, at the Read House, Friday Evening, November 12th. Approximately sixty members of the Army of the United States and prominent civilians were present and had the pleasure of listening to an interesting address by General Hagood, regarding the needs and future of the Officers' Reserve Corps.

The first session of the 1926-1927 Corps Area Tactical School for members of the Army of the United States in Chattanooga and vicinity was held at the city Y. M. C. A. Building, Wednesday evening, November 10th. Though the attendance was small, those present was very much interested in the conference on organization conducted by Major Oral E. Clark, Infantry D. O. L.

The second session of this school was held on November 24th, and covered the subject of Map Reading. This conference was presented in an interesting and able manner by Major Watkins, District Engineer.

305TH CAVALRY—Philadelphia, Pa.

Colonel W. I. Forbes, Commanding

The 1926-27 Inactive Training period for the regiment, started on October 19th with a two hour ride at the Quartermaster outdoor riding ring, 21st Street and Oregon Avenue. Through the kindness of Major D. F. Munnikhuyzen, instructor in equitation at the Quartermaster School, the regimental equitation class was able to ride outdoors on each of the subsequent Tuesdays in October. During November the equitation class rode each Wednesday at the First City Troop Armory, 23rd and Ronstead Streets.

At these two hour periods of equitation, 1½ hours was devoted to instruction in riding (T. R. 50-40); 15 minutes to points of the horse, conformation, and diseases; 15 minutes to Cavalry Drill and Saber work.

The average attendance for the period mentioned above was 21 officers and enlisted men of the regiment, per ride.

Inactive Training, 1926-27

In addition to the weekly rides, the schedule of Inactive Training calls for bi-weekly meetings on the second and last Wednesday of each month. These meetings will alternately consist of conference or map problems, and rifle and pistol shooting on indoor range. On the scheduled nights the class, after riding, has dinner together at the Aldine Hotel, then returns to the armory for the night session.

During this period of Inactive Training, everything possible will be done to develop troop esprit. The Regimental Commander has donated a silver cup for the troop or squadron detachment having the highest rating during the 1926-27 period of Inactive Training. In arriving at the highest rating the following will count:

- a. Attendance at all activities.
- b. Record of scores at rifle and pistol shoots.
- c. Monthly practical troop test in equitation.

During October and November the following meetings were held:

October 27th—Rifle and pistol shoot at Sergeant Mathiot's farm near West Chester. Twenty officers and enlisted men attended.

November 10th—Conference Map Problem and exercise in issuing combat orders. Attendance, 17 members.

November 24th—Rifle and pistol shoot at First City Troop indoor range. Attendance, 18 members.

The weekly conferences, for officers and enlisted men of the regiment enrolled in the Basic Officers' Correspondence Course, were held each Wednesday during October, and November at Regimental Headquarters from 12:00 noon to 1:00 p. m. Lieutenants Adams, Chew, Ennis, Esler, Fotterall, Hunter, Kirk, Roberts, Taylor, Town, Sergeants Lacey, Mathiot and Ritter regularly attended, and great credit is due them for giving up their noon hour to this work.

Polo

The regimental polo team, through the courtesy and kindness of Colonel John Converse, has again been able to join the 103rd Cavalry Polo Association, and use their ponies and armory for practice and games. This courtesy and kindness on the part of the National Guard is greatly appreciated by the regiment, as polo would not be possible if it were not for their co-operation.



Photo by Philadelphia Evening Bulletin

The 305th Cavalry Team

Left to right, Capt. Brogden, Major Thompson, Lieuts. Bray and Fotterall.

Polo practice started on November 26th, and games with outside teams will be played weekly during December, January, February and March.

Horse Shows

The regimental horse show team competed in the following horse shows with results as shown:

In the Philadelphia Riders and Drivers Association Horse Show on September 16th,

17th and 18th the regimental team composed of Major Thompson, Lieutenants Bray and Fotterall, took the following events:

First place in Military Team Jumping; first, second and third places in Military Jumping (inside course); second, third and fourth places in Military Jumping (outside course).

In the Bryn Mawr Horse Show on September 29th, and 30th, October 1st and 2nd the regimental team composed of Major Thompson, Captain Brogden, Lieutenants Gardiner and Fotterall, took the following places:

Third and fourth places in Military Team Jumping (the regiment entered two teams in this event); second place in the Remount class; third and fourth places in Military Jumping, and fourth place in Officers' Chargers class.

In the Jeffersonville Horse Show on October 16th, the regimental team composed of Major Thompson, Captain Brogden and Lieutenant Fotterall, took first, second, third and fourth places in Military Jumping (over outside course). Lieutenant Fotterall riding two different horses took first and second places in this event, Captain Brogden third, and Major Thompson fourth.

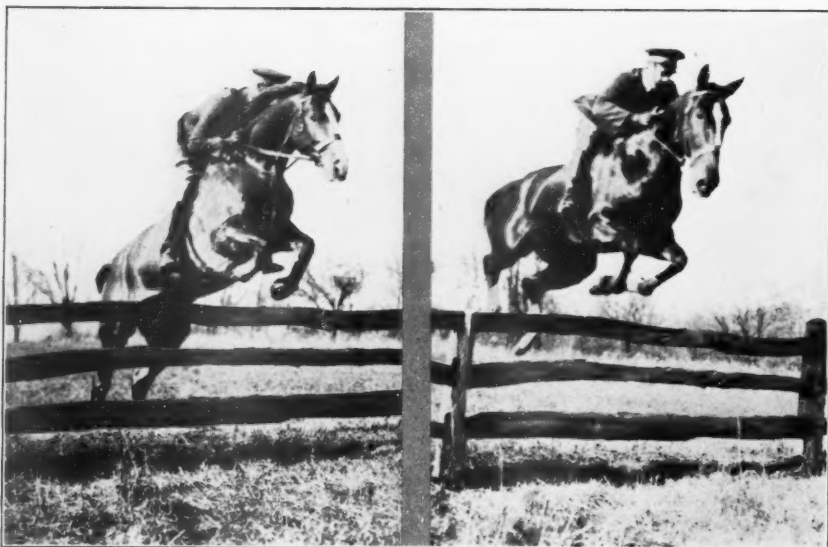


Photo by Philadelphia Evening Bulletin

Left—Gold Bond, Captain Brogden up; right—Manners, Lieut. Fotterall up.

In the Whitelands Horse Show and Race Meet on November 6th, Major Thompson, Captains Brogden and Livingston, Lieutenants Bray and Fotterall, represented the regiment. Lieutenant Bray did exceptionally well at this show and took the following places:

First place in Open Jumping class, second place in Members Jumping class, second place in Flat Race, second place in Pair Jumping class, and was a member of the team that took third place in Hunt Team Jumping class. The 305th team composed of Major Thompson, Captain Brogden and Lieutenant Fotterall took second place in that event. Captain Brogden took third place in the Members Steeplechase and Captain Livingston third place in Members Jumping class.

Great credit is due Lieutenant Potterall for his kindness in allowing the regiment to enter four of his fine hunters as regimental entries in the above mentioned horse shows. As a result of his kindness and sportsmanship the regiment has a beautiful collection of cups and ribbons on display at regimental headquarters. The regiment is also indebted to Capt. John C. Groome for allowing his fine mare *Tar Baby* to be entered as a regimental entry in the Bryn Mawr Show. *Tar Baby* took a ribbon in every class she was entered.

308TH CAVALRY

"Take the track to the left hand behind Major Cherrington."

The command came from Captain Arthur H. Truxes, executive officer of the 308th Cavalry on the night of October 6th at Hunt Armory, Pittsburgh. His words were music to the ears of some twelve or thirteen "veterans" and five or six "rookies," for they signalled the opening of another season of inactive training.

Most of the "old guard" were there—Major Graham, Lieutenants Beese, Peebles, Goldsworthy and Lynds, and Sergeants Barr, Shearer and Rosenbaum. Lieutenant Fuller, one of the old faithful, was missed.

It was an auspicious opening, for, as the attendance at the following rides indicated, the season of 1926-27 promises to be the most active in the history of the regiment. For the eight rides in October, there was a total attendance of 184 officers and non-commissioned officers and for November, the total attendance was 176.

The rides are being held every Wednesday evening from 7:30 to 9:30 and every Sunday morning from 9:30 to 11:00.

At the third ride, Captain Truxes divided the class into an advanced group and a "rookie" squad. Major Graham put the advanced class through a snappy drill at the walk, trot, and gallop, while Captain Truxes gave the "rookie" squad instructions in the fundamentals of equitation. At subsequent rides, Captain Truxes took the advanced class and assigned the "rookie" squad to veterans from the advanced class.

Jumping Competition

A cup has been given to the 308th riding class to be offered as a trophy for the highest score in the jumping competition. The contest started Nov. 14th, and will continue over a period of three months, November, December, and January. Competitive jumping is scored on the second Sunday morning of each month. Two jumps are taken by each competitor, the total points for the two jumps to be divided by 2 for the score. A competitor absent is given zero. The competitor totaling the highest score for the three months will win the cup.

Regimental Meetings

Nine officers and non-commissioned officers attended the first unit conference held at regimental headquarters October 8th. Combat Orders, the Organization of the 62nd Cavalry Division and the Mobilization Plans of the 308th Regiment were discussed. Each man present was given a thorough understanding of his own personal duties and responsibilities in case of a major emergency.

Thirteen members of the Regiment attended the unit meeting on November 12. Duties and responsibilities of the brigade, regiment and squadron officers in the field were discussed under the leadership of the Regiment's executive officer, Capt. Arthur H. Truxes. The second part of the program was taken up with instruction in advance guard action. This was preparatory to the squadron problem to be worked out at the next meeting on December 10.

New Books Reviewed

Advanced Equitation By BARETTO DE SOUZA. Illustrated. 419 pp. E. P. Dutton & Company, New York. \$7.00.

In this work the author takes up the subject of equitation at the point to which he had carried it in his *Principles of Equitation*, and continues it to a more advanced and artistic stage. The same excellent method of treatment of the subject which characterized the former book, is followed in *Advanced Equitation*. The principles discussed are thoroughly analyzed, and the technique and reasons for each step so clearly set forth, that for the earnest and conscientious student, an instructor may be dispensed with. In this respect, when an instructor is not available, a work of this kind has many advantages over a technical manual of equitation.

While the book goes into the science of equitation to include high school work, there is much that will be of interest and value to those who do not care to continue the training of a horse to this point.

Two chapters are devoted to Jumping. There will be some disagreement with the author's views on this subject. While he starts out with the premise, that theoretically, the rider's torso should be vertical at all times, this is qualified to suit special conditions, even so far as approval of a reasonable degree of leaning forward by the rider as the jump is made. The author does, however, strongly condemn what he calls the "chaise longue" seat, where the rider is practically resting his torso on the horse's neck, with his lower legs extended to the rear. That such an exaggerated seat is common is clear to anyone who follows horse shows, either on the ground or through the medium of the pages of illustrated periodicals.

In addition to many half-tones, the text is profusely illustrated with Mr. Victor Nikoll's drawings.

Smoky By WILL JAMES. Illustrated. 310 pp. Charles Scribner's Sons, New York. \$2.50.

To those who love horses, and few there are who do not, this story of a one-man cow horse, by Will James, will have a strong appeal. It is believed that no writer has more accurately described the probable reactions of a horse to life and his surroundings. Smoky practically tells his own story, although it is not written in the first person.

From the time when, as a wobbly colt, he first saw the light of day on the range with all its dangers in the shape of coyotes, bears and mountain lions, his life history is depicted with a sympathy and an understanding difficult to equal. And the greatest friend of this horse among a thousand, was a man, and also were men his greatest enemies.

His adventures on the range, his first contact with man, the first feel of a rope, his breaking and development into a first-class cow horse, are graphically described. After having been stolen by a half-breed horse thief, Smoky's subsequent life of hardship, culminating in his experiences as a rodeo outlaw, makes him a hater of man and all his works. However, after many tribulations, he finally comes into his own.

Will James' inimitable drawings add much to the interest of the work.

It is with the greatest relief and satisfaction that one reads this book after perusing some of the incredible stories of horses which have recently appeared.

The Fighting Cheyennes By GEORGE BIRD GRINNELL. Maps. 430 pp. Charles Scribner's Sons, New York. \$4.00.

This book, by one of the greatest living authorities on the Indian, depicts the history, from the earliest days to the present time, of one of the most warlike of all Indian tribes. Subsequent to 1856, the Cheyennes were usually represented in the Indian wars on the western plains, so this narrative practically covers the history of these wars from that date to 1891. Miles, Crook, Custer and other famous Indian campaigners fought against the Cheyennes and found them to be worthy opponents in every instance.

The author is a friend of the Indian and has an intimate knowledge of his character and psychology. Everyone familiar with the Indian and his history will admit that he has many admirable qualities, and that the record of the dealings of the Whites with him has been marked by injustice, illtreatment and broken treaties. In the westward course of civilization the Red Man was doomed to disappear, but that many of our Indian wars might have been avoided, is indisputable.

We have had many descriptions of battles with Indians, but few from the Indian standpoint. In this work there are many accounts of such battles from Indian sources. "What the Indians saw in the battles here described," says Mr. Grinnell, "and in many others—I have learned during years of intimate acquaintance with those who took part in them."

In studying the Indian campaign of 1876, one cannot fail to be impressed with the degree of strategical and tactical leadership exhibited by the Cheyenne and Sioux chiefs, and the fighting qualities of their warriors. This campaign was to have been one of co-operation between the commands of General Crook from the Department of the Platte, General Terry from the Department of Dakota, and General Gibbon from the Department of Montana. While on his way to the rendezvous, Crook was eliminated from the campaign by Crazy Horse at the battle of the Rosebud. Crazy Horse then joined the hostiles on the Little Big Horn, where Custer's force from Fort Abraham Lincoln was defeated before it effected a junction with Gibbon's force for the anticipated fight. Further, there exists no better example in history of taking advantage of a division of enemy forces to defeat each in detail, than is illustrated by the Indian tactics at the battle of the Little Big Horn.

Highways and Byways of the Civil War By CLARENCE EDWARD MACARTNEY. Illustrated. 273 pp. Dorrance and Company. New York. \$3.00.

In this work the gifted author of *Lincoln and his Generals* has described some twenty Civil War battles and campaigns from the human interest viewpoint, but with an accurate historical background. No pretense is made at giving a complete or technical account of the various battles, but the discussion in each case is ample for a clear picture of the situation, while the causes leading to victory or defeat are graphically brought out.

Much of the material is new, and the characteristic side lights thrown on prominent personalities of both the opposing forces, make the book unique.

This work and its predecessor, mentioned above, are excellent examples of how history may be made interesting without loss of accuracy.

Air Warfare By MAJOR WILLIAM C. SHERMAN, Air Corps. Illustrated. 305 pp. The Ronald Press Company, New York. \$4.25.

The author's experience as a flyer and as instructor, together with his present position as instructor in Air Tactics at the Command and General Staff School, give this work an authoritative status which should recommend it to all who are interested in this phase of war. The subject matter is intended not only for study by air officers, but also by officers of other arms, and it can be read with profit by all.

In this book we have for the first time a thorough analysis of the principles of air warfare and their practical applications. Observation, attack, pursuit, and bombardment aviation are fully explained, from both the strategical and the tactical viewpoints.

Air Men and Air Craft By MAJOR HENRY H. ARNOLD, Air Corps. Illustrated. 216 pp. The Ronald Press Company, New York. \$3.50.

This is another volume of the Ronald Aeronautic Library, and is primarily intended as an introduction to the subject of flying for those who expect to take up training as pilots. Written in non-technical language, the subject matter is easily understood by the layman, and includes a vast fund of information which should be of great value to all who are interested in air craft and flying. The general reader will especially enjoy the chapters on famous airplane and seaplane flights, and illustrious flyers of the World War.

Chapters on qualifications for air pilots, courses of flying instruction, U. S. Army Air Service, and the U. S. Navy, will benefit those who expect to take up military or commercial aviation.

Leadership. A Manual on Conduct and Administration By WILLIAM COLBY RUCKER. 71 pp. The MacMillan Company, New York.

This little book was written especially for the Public Health Service and the hospital and sanitary field, but all military men will find much of value in the chapters on the basics of character, self-leadership, and leadership of service personnel, wherein the practice of leadership is standardized and useful rules of conduct laid down.

Soldiers of the Plains By P. E. BYRNE. Minton, Barch & Co., New York. \$2.50.

Reviewed by First Lieut. H. Engerud, 14th Cavalry

To one who has read and studied Colonel Graham's article, *The Story of the Little Big Horn*, which appeared in the July issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, Mr. P. E. Byrne's *Soldiers of the Plains* will prove most interesting collateral reading; taking up, from the side of the Indians, the campaigns of the sixties and seventies, many interesting side lights are turned on the subject.

Mr. Byrne is a resident of North Dakota and spent many years in research preceding the writing of his book. In addition, the author has spent many years of his life among the Indians, being one of the few white men having an intimate knowledge of the Sioux. He is, therefore, especially qualified to write such a book, in which he gives the Indian his due for the brilliant generalship, military efficiency, fortitude and individual gallantry that characterized so many of his campaigns. Mr. Byrne, in the foreword to his book, makes the statement:—"The Indian was the great soldier of the plains, in many respects the greatest fighter the world has ever known. But, unlike the white man, the Indian had no press agency through which to broadcast his story to the world."

Assuming the role of Indian press agent, Mr. Byrne presents his subject in a most interesting manner. Starting his book with a description of the land of the Sioux, he devotes several chapters to the treaties, the alleged breaking of which led to the opening of the various campaigns. General Crook's winter campaign of 1876 is graphically described. The plan of battle and the details of the Little Big Horn fight are carefully discussed. Interesting word-sketches of the principals, including Generals Terry, Custer, and Gibbon, the Scout Reynolds, Chiefs Rain-In-The-Face, Crazy Horse, Gall, Sitting Bull and many others are interspersed throughout the book. This personal touch lends an element of interest which adds greatly to the value of the work.

Mr. Byrne also describes the Indian tactics, methods of battle and other subjects of interest to a military man. The retreat of the Nez Perce's Chief, Joseph, in 1877 which was afterwards characterized by General Merritt as a "wonderfully conducted withdrawal" is described in great detail. During this withdrawal, Joseph, in his march through wild and exceedingly rough country, resorted to feints, stratagems, ambushes, resolute marches, defense and passage of rivers with all his impedimenta, including women and children, the meeting and battling with intercepting forces or the avoidance of these, camouflage, etc.

Although written solely from the Indian standpoint with the idea of glorifying and defending the Indian in his wars with the Whites, the book contains much of interest to the student of military history and especially to a cavalryman.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (Great Britain) October, 1926

By hunting men, and the number in our service is constantly increasing, *The Keeping of a Hunting Diary* by Major T. Preston, M. C. Yorkshire Hussars, may be considered a novel idea, but the author ably demonstrates the value to be derived from it by military men. It would unquestionably teach a man to know country.

In *Nolan and the Light Brigade*, Lieut.-Colonel F. E. Whitton, C. M. G., makes some observations on the charges of the Light Brigade at Balaklava which are of great interest to all cavalrymen. By those whose only knowledge of this tragic event is derived from the poem, Colonel Whitton's article can be read with much profit.

Someone *did* blunder, but the author, admitting that Nolan did so, holds that this was made possible by a series of blunders on the part of the Commander-in-chief.

This is an outstanding article. Its value is enhanced by an excellent sketch of the field of battle.

The Journal of the United Service Institution of India. October, 1926

In "*Scaled Pattern*" *Formations for the Cavalry Squadron in Manoeuvre*, Major A. G. O. Mayne, D. S. E., discusses what in our service are known as "normal formations," a tabooed term. The article is well illustrated with a number of large scale diagrams.

The German side of the war in East Africa has been set forth by General Von Lettow-Vorbeck in his book *My Reminiscences of East Africa*. Colonel G. M. Orr, C. B. E., D. S. O. in 1914-1915, in *East Africa* deals with it from the allied viewpoints. His discussion of the theatre of war, the armed forces, the military problem and operations, afford one a good basis for further study of this campaign.

Revue de Cavalerie (France) Sept.-Oct., 1926

Reviewed by Capt. W. E. Shipp, Cavalry

The Spanish Cavalry. By X. The operations of the Riff have furnished the Spanish Cavalry with strong lessons from which they have vastly profited. The teachings of these campaigns after those of the World War, have brought about progressive transformations that budgetary considerations have somewhat retarded, but the Spanish Cavalry of 1926, while retaining the pomp and panoply of yore, has not exactly kept its soul of 15 years ago.

In the Peninsula, are not raised the sarcasm and doubt that are known in France. The Spanish still remain a cavalier people, partly as a legacy from the Moors, and partly on account of the rugged nature of the country, which is still cut up into vast estates and has few and, often poor roads. In such a difficult country, cavalry has an unusual opportunity to carry out its many roles.

While the Spanish high command has taken cognizance of the lessons from recent campaigns, and has profited from French military doctrines, it is in the cavalry that the realization is farthest removed from the principles in vogue in France.

Of the thirty regiments in the Spanish Cavalry (hussars, lancers, and chasseurs) three are in Morocco and the remainder in the Peninsula. Eighteen regiments will probably be grouped into three cavalry divisions; eight will constitute the divisional cavalry for sixteen infantry divisions; and one will be employed as mountain cavalry.

Five brigades are now actually constituted, but this organization is subject to change, as the organization is in a state of flux. Even the organization of cavalry corps has been studied. An infantry division has one or two squadrons at its disposal but the "reconnaissance groups" of the French have not been used.

Since 1918 a group of instruction has been organized at Carabanchel, composed of three squadrons specially recruited and trained. It is used for experimentation with arms and in tactical exercises and also serves as a model for other units.

Each regiment has a staff, six squadrons (4 sabre squadrons, one automatic arms squadron and a depot squadron, and a combat train. A sabre squadron has four sections of three or four squads each, while an automatic arms squadron has two sections of light machine guns of four guns each, and two sections of machine rifles of six guns each. At present these automatic arms squadrons are far from being thus equipped, as they usually have only two machine rifles of different models in each squadron on account of hesitation in the choice of a model.

Armored car squadrons of four sections of four cars each, each car carrying one machine gun and an infantry cannon are planned, but they are still in an embryonic state.

The regimental organization is rather surprising in that the sabre squadrons are not directly joined with the automatic squadrons. Since peace time maneuvers are slower than those necessitated by the exigencies of war, since the Spanish terrain is so rugged, and since there are so many souvenirs from the Moroccan campaigns of combined action, the Spanish still count much on mounted action, supported by the fire of a sister arm. Moreover, there is a fear of making too many sudden changes in organization and equipment, resulting in confusion and difficulty in instruction.

It is understood that the automatic squadrons will closely follow the sabre squadrons and will reinforce them in case they fight on foot, for which action the sabre squadrons are armed with the rifle and bayonet. Gradually the Spanish will perhaps adopt an organization similar to the French, unifying the types of squadrons. This will, however, depend on time and credits.

All machine guns are carried on pack animals instead of on carts, as the latter are useless in Spain or Morocco.

Elementary instruction is carried on by squadrons, and recruits in groups of about 50, are placed in classes under a lieutenant assisted by NCO's and selected soldiers. The recruit is generally used to riding and quickly becomes a good horseman. At the end of three months of instruction the recruits take part in squadron and regimental exercises and instruction. There are two classes of recruits a year but the previous deductions for the general services are very large. Besides, Guard and other special troops still remain very important, so much so, that the squadrons and regiments have only very inferior effectives in comparison with those authorized, and especially to those it would be wise to maintain in order for instruction to be profitable. The constitution of skeleton squadrons is an unsuitable solution of the problem, consequently, serious reductions of units have been contemplated, but the personnel of the latter are not inactive, as the military world has always played a preponderant role in Spanish politics.

The cavalry of the Peninsula is in principle mounted on native horses, many of which are Andalusians, middle size and rather thin but showing the Arab strain. The remount service is organized similarly to that of the French. It maintains breeding-studs and depots both in Spain and in Morocco. Some purchases are made each year in England and in France by a special commission. During the spring of 1926 there were bought in Spain 1455 saddle, 176 draft, and 58 pack horses, as many as possible being three year olds, at prices ranging from 850 to 1000 pesetas. After purchase the young horses are placed in depots, and then are sent to regiments or schools for training.

The Equitation School of Madrid perfects the training of officers who have already graduated from the School of Valladolid and of NCO's destined to become stable sergeants in infantry regiments or for general staff stables.

Cavalry School Notes

From November 13th-20th, the Cavalry School was represented at the Kansas City American Royal Horse Show by a team consisting of Major E. W. Taulbee in charge, Captain E. A. Williams, Lieutenant P. C. Febiger, and Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin. It was exceptionally well taken care of in the ladies' classes by the splendid performances of Mrs. S. H. Griffin, Mrs. D. H. Blakelock and Mrs. P. C. Febiger.

In a total of fifteen classes, civilians won six, Fort Leavenworth three, and the Cavalry School six. The civilian hunters and jumpers were of much higher quality than those entered in previous years.

Fort Riley was also represented by an artillery drill of Battery A, 9th F. A. which proved to be the greatest attraction of the show. By giving many a thrill, this performance made a great hit with the crowd and received an extended ovation.

Cavalry School Hunt Club

The regular hunt season of the Cavalry School Hunt Club opened with much enthusiasm on October 24. Drag hunts are held twice weekly. A breakfast and dance followed the hunt on Armistice Day, and a supper and dance is scheduled to follow the mid-week run between Christmas and New Year. Nor are the hunts limited to officers and their families; one hunt for soldiers has already been held and several more are scheduled. Keen interest in the sport is taken by the enlisted men and their performances are invariably excellent.

The Fort Riley reservation abounds with good galloping ground and canyons, as well as the regular school jumps and obstacles. These have been augmented by numerous panels placed in the pasture fences, thus opening up an increased variety of courses.

Growing interest is being taken in teaching the individual hounds. The training of several fine litters of puppies has already been started.

What bids fair to be the most successful season in the history of the Cavalry School Hunt Club may be attributed to the enthusiasm and efforts of the following club officers: Captain Robert W. Grow, 2d Cavalry, Master of Fox Hounds; Captain Howard N. Beeman, V. C., Whipper-in; 2nd Lieutenant John W. Wofford, 2d Cavalry, Whipper-in.

Football

A well organized league of eight troop and company football teams played a schedule of twelve games each. Troop G, 2d Cavalry, Major E. L. N. Glass, coach, and Company A, 9th Engineer Battalion, Major D. G. Richart (Cav.) coach, went through the season without losing a game. In the Championship Game played by these two teams on Saturday, December 4, "G" Troop won by a score of 7 to 5.

Basketball

The Fort Riley basketball season opens on December 9, 1926 and closes on or about January 30, 1927. A league consisting of twelve organization teams has been organized. Each team will play each other team once, the league championship to be determined on a percentage basis. A suitable trophy will be awarded.

The Standard

The Standard, the weekly periodical of the Cavalry School started its fifth year under the management of the following officers, all students in the Advanced Equitation Class: Lieutenant W. H. W. Reinburg, Editor; Lieutenant T. T. Thornburgh, Assistant Editor; Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin, Business Manager.

This periodical is published without expense to the government and affords much enjoyment to the Cavalry School as well as the cavalry service in general. Tom's Letters, covering post events, are regular features that are eagerly looked forward to.

Foreign Students

Foreign armies are represented at the Cavalry School during the present school year by the following students: 1st Lieutenants A. B. Bolivar, M. R. Arteaga and M. Villalon, Cuban Army; 1st Lieutenant R. Calderon, Mexican Army.

Lieutenant Bolivar and Calderon are old acquaintances of the Cavalry School. The former completed the Troop Officers' Course last year and is now enrolled in the Advanced Equitation Course; the latter arrived early in 1926 to master the English language prior to entering on his present course with the troop officers.

Fort Riley Golf Club

Through the indefatigable efforts of Major Richard Newman, a 9 hole golf course was planned and constructed around the Godfrey Court area at the northeast side of the post. The course is located over rolling terrain especially well suited for golf. It is 3100 yards long with a par of thirty-six. Par has not yet been equaled by any amateur golfer, neither has it been bettered by any professional. The greens are planted with German bent grass and are declared by many professionals to be the best west of the Mississippi.

The course was opened for play on August 15, 1926. In the first tournament, seventy-two players took part. Golf is very popular and, at the present rate, an additional nine holes will soon be necessary.

Boney Bonebrak, formerly with the Topeka Country Club, has been secured as the Professional, with Frank James as his assistant.

Army-Navy Game

Radio reports of the Army-Navy Game were received at the Godfrey Court Officers' Hop Room by about one hundred seventy-five members of the garrison. Shortly after one o'clock, the Second Cavalry Band, playing appropriate airs, made a tour of the post. It was accompanied by an Army Mule and a Navy Goat, both gaily caparisoned. As the various quarters were passed, each added its quota to the impromptu parade that marched to Godfrey Court where the reports were received and plotted. Music was furnished at intervals by the Second Cavalry Band alternating with the Ninth Cavalry Orchestra. It was a regular cavalry "get-together" the lowest point of which was the tie score.

Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Marfa, Texas Colonel Conrad S. Babcock, Commanding

On August 16th, 1926, the 1st Cavalry left Marfa, Texas by train for San Antonio, Texas, for the purpose of participating in the filming of the "Rough Riders," by the Famous Players Lasky Co.

Arriving in San Antonio on the morning of August 17th, the regiment immediately established camp at "Roosevelt Field," (Old Fair Grounds), near the original location of the camp of the Rough Riders of the Spanish-American War.

While there, the personnel took part in the filming of the following scenes: Enlisting of Recruits; Recruit Drill; Riding wild horses; Review of the Rough Riders by Lieut. Colonel Roosevelt.

On September 17th, the regiment marched to Camp Stanley, Texas, where the Corps Area, Division and Brigade Tactical Inspections were held. On completion of these inspections, the picture work was again taken up. Scenes were taken of the fight at Kettle Hill and San Juan Hill.

Leaving Camp Stanley by train on October 20th, the regiment arrived at Marfa on October 21st.

The Horse Show and Polo Teams were sent to Fort Bliss, Texas to participate in the 1st Cavalry Division Horse Show and Polo Tournament.

Capt. Wm. T. Bauskett won the blue ribbon and a cup for the regiment in the Championship Jumping Class. Lieut. Paul G. Kendall won the blue ribbon and a plate in the Officers' Jumping Class.

The senior polo team won the Consolation prize, and the junior polo team lost a close game in the finals of the Junior Tournament to the 8th Cavalry Junior Team.

The football team has made a good record, beating the town of Marfa team and Fort Stockton twice, and a tie with Wm. Beaumont General Hospital.

Two months in the hot, moist climate of San Antonio, acting as extras for the movies, is, from a military standpoint, the poorest training possible.

As a change from routine work and training, the first month was enjoyed by the regiment. When the command moved to Camp Stanley and was practically marooned on a Texas hillside, with long hours of waiting in the sun for the movie director to receive an inspiration, the regiment decided that the movie game is a very poor occupation for the Regular Army.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas **Colonel L. W. Oliver, Commanding**

For the second time, the rifle platoons of the regiment competed for the Draper Trophy, won this year by a platoon of Troop C, commanded by Lieutenant DeBardleben. The details of this very exacting test of a platoon already have been published. A summary, however, of what was required, and the Commandant's comment on the work of the platoons, would seem to be appropriate. Each platoon was self-sustaining in its march of about 60 miles, on the execution of a reconnaissance mission, under assumed war conditions throughout the competition. Each trooper carried on his horse 12 pounds of oats and enough food for four meals. To make up for lack of hay, the animals were grazed at every opportunity, and all returned in good condition. If the troopers learned the value of grazing and nothing else the competition was well worth while.

The Commandant, in an official letter to the Regimental Commander, stated: "The horsemanship of officers and men was excellent. There is no question but that the command is highly efficient in any kind of cross country work which may be required under field service conditions. The physical stamina, shown by officers and men, was most gratifying and is positive proof of their ability to meet practically any physical demand made upon them."

F. Troop, Captain Bruck commanding, was chosen to represent the regiment in the Goodrich Trophy competition, the results of which are as yet unknown.

Troops A, E, F, and G have had the honor, at different times during the last three months of escorting Governor Paulen of Kansas, Governor Baker of Missouri, Senator Means of Colorado, and Generals Crosby, Hagood and Winans. On each occasion the smart appearance of the escort troops was remarked. There is no better way of maintaining the smart appearance of troops than by parading them for distinguished visitors, and by turning them out for such duty by roster of troops available.

During the last two months, the Second Squadron and the 7th Division Air Corps have carried on a number of experiments with the object of determining at what distance a plane could see a squadron, under varying conditions; the effect of hasty camouflage expedients; and the length of time a squadron would be delayed in its march on account of avoiding air observation. The final test was a reconnaissance by an observation plane to locate a squadron and its train on the march, and a surprise attack by three planes flying at an altitude of about a hundred feet. The conclusions of the board detailed to observe these tests will undoubtedly be published later.

Officers and men of the regiment participated in the Autumn Race Meeting of the Cavalry School Hunt Club, which was in charge of Major Edgar M. Whiting of the Second Cavalry. At least one Dragoon placed in every steeplechase but one. Major

Franklin won the Lorillard Cup and Lieutenant Wofford the Hitchcock Cup; Lieutenant Wofford and Major Whiting took second and third respectively in the Remount Service Steeplechase; and Second Cavalry enlisted men finished first, second and third in the Mounted Service Steeplechase, Corporal Lerdrup winning on G Troop's *Spike*.

The football season has been unusually interesting. Each rifle troop and Headquarters Troop have had good teams in the field. At the time of writing, Company A, 9th Engineers alone stands between G Troop and the Post championship; the two teams having played a scoreless tie game earlier in the season, and each being undefeated.

THIRD CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel William J. Glasgow, Commanding —

The Squadron, plus Headquarters and Service Troop, returned from the National Guard, District of Columbia, Target Range at Camp Sims, Anacostia, D. C., on October second, after having spent a month there. Sixteen men qualified as experts with the rifle, Headquarters leading the list with eight experts. As Troop G was still at the Sesqui-Centennial in Philadelphia, it was unable to participate in this year's firing.

Troops E and F each fired twelve men with the machine rifle over the prescribed course, and qualified all as experts.

During the recent visit to Washington of her Majesty, the Queen of Roumania, Troop E acted as her escort from the Union Station to the Roumanian Legation. On the following day, Troop F acted as guard of honor and escort for her Majesty and party to the Arlington Cemetery, during the ceremony of placing a wreath on the tomb of the Unknown Soldier. Her Majesty made some very complimentary remarks about her two mounted escorts.

During the second week in November the District Commander made his annual tactical inspection of the post.

A team of three officers, Captain John H. Irving, Captain Jess G. Boykin, and 1st Lieutenant Paul D. Robinett, with two enlisted men, and eight horses, under the supervision of Major Adna R. Chaffee, participated in the New York Horse Show from November twenty-second to twenty-seventh.

The Third Cavalry Team brought nine ribbons back with them. *Peggy* of Troop F, ridden by Sergeant Anthony Quatichesy won two blues: the Jockey Club Sweepstakes prize for remounts, and the Remount Cup. *Peggy* has already won two Eastern Endurance Rides for the Third Cavalry.

Captain Irving, Captain Boykin, and Lieutenant Robinett, on *Firejump*, *Fairfax*, and *Brown Boy*, fourth place in Pair Jumping. Major Chaffee on *Miss Kitten*, won second place in the triple bar class. Captain Boykin and Lieutenant Robinett on *Flash* and *Brown Boy*, fourth place in Pair Jumping. Major Chaffee on *Miss Kitten*, won second place in a Polo Pony class. Sergeant Frank York, riding *Applejack*, won two ribbons in Troopers Mounts classes.

Work is going steadily along in preparation for the winter's riding hall demonstrations that start in January. All the troops are perfecting new stunts, and it is believed that the exhibitions this coming winter will be better than ever before.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vt.

Lieut. Colonel F. D. Griffith, Jr., Commanding

On Labor Day, Troop A, Captain H. H. Dunn, commanding, marched to Richmond, Vermont, and participated in local exercises.

On September 8th, the Squadron participated in the Fort Ethan Allen Horseshow and Gymkana, and its entries were placed in events as follows:

Troopers Mounts—1st—Private Peloquin, Troop C, on *Rabbit*; 2nd—Corporal Smith, Hq. Det. 1st Sq., on *Two Bits*; 3rd—Private Bolas, Troop B, on *Pomp*.

Musical Chair—1st—Private Gordon, Troop A; 2nd—Private Mathieux, Hq. Det. 1st Sq.; 3rd—Sergeant Pecor, Troop B.

Enlisted Mens Jumping—1st—Sergeant Fenix, Troop B, on *Buster*.

Touch and Out Jumping, Officers, 4 feet—2nd—Captain A. K. deLorimier, on *Lady*; 3rd—1st Lieut. Charles R. Chase, on *Aeroplane*.

Championship Jumping—1st—Captain A. J. deLorimier, on *Lady*; 2nd—Major Frederick Herr, on *Jim*.

Officers' Chargers—3rd—Major Frederick Herr, on *Jim*.

During the week September 5th to 11th, a polo tournament was held at the Post. Four teams participated, two teams composed of officers of the 7th Field Artillery, and this Squadron, one team from the Canadian Cavalry Barracks at St. Johns, P. Q., and a civilian Canadian team from Montreal.

The Squadron entered four horses in the annual Eastern Endurance Ride held at Brandon, Vermont, Oct. 11-15th. One entry developed lameness the week preceding the ride and was scratched. Of the three entries starting, two placed in the money. *Stockings*, Hq. Det. 1st Squadron, ridden by Sergeant Stanley Blazejevski, Troop C, 3d Cavalry, finished in second place, and *Bunny Boy*, Troop B, ridden by Corporal John Nickerson, Troop B, 3d Cavalry, finished in fifth place.

The Squadron completed the annual saber practice with the following results.

	Expert Swordsman	Excellent Swordsman	Swordsman	Unquali- fied	Percentage Qualified
Troop A	11	7	14	9	78.04
Troop B	17	19	13	5	90.74
Troop C	7	15	15	13	73.80

On November 22nd, the troops in the Squadron engaged in competition for the cup awarded annually by the Regimental Commander to the troop at this station making the highest aggregate score in special saber contest. The contest was run over the regular qualification course with the time limit reduced to one minute and twenty seconds. The following scores were obtained: Troop A—2091½; troop B—1923½; troop C—1783.

Major General Preston Brown, Commanding the First Corps Area, made his annual tactical inspection of the Squadron during his visit to the Post, September 27th and 28th, 1926.

FOURTH CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Ft. D. A. Russell, Wyoming Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Commanding

On August 28th, the Fourth Cavalry left its home in garrison to live a month under canvas in the field, marching to Torrington, Wyoming, thence to Douglas, Wyoming, returning via Wheatland and Chugwater to Ft. Russell. The only men in the regiment not making the march, were several left in charge of barracks and stables, and a few to be discharged before the return of the Regiment.

We arrived at Torrington on August 31st, and on September 1st, 2nd, and 3d, participated in the Goshen County Fair.

Daily organization entries were as follows: Musical drill at a gallop by the Famous Black Horse Troop, Troop F; a cavalry drill at the gallop exhibiting the use of three weapons, the rifle, saber and pistol and the crossing of obstacles mounted, by a full strength troop made up of E and G Troops; a radio demonstration by Headquarters Troop and the Second Squadron Detachment.

Daily individual entries included entries in horse jumping, short races in saddle horse classes, Roman races and rescue races. Many prizes were won by members of the regiment.

On September 5th the regiment resumed the march on to Douglas. After leaving Guernsey, (about 15 miles north of Torrington) the regiment marched along the Old Oregon Trail for over two days until our route joined with the Yellowstone Highway leading to Douglas.

Just fifty years before, the Fourth Cavalry was making part of this same march, marching from Robinson, Nebraska, (now Ft. Robinson) through old Ft. Laramie, Wyo. to Ft. Fetterman, Wyo. (now abandoned for many years) to suppress Indian uprisings in

northern Wyoming. Old Ft. Laramie has been abandoned since 1890, but on Sunday morning, September 5, 1926, the Fourth Cavalry camped on the old parade ground in the shadows of what are now ruins of quarters, barracks and stables. That Sunday evening, Lieut. Davison of the regiment, gave a very interesting talk to officers and men on the history of old Ft. Laramie and of the part the Fourth Cavalry played in the Indian skirmishes in this vicinity in 1876. The next morning, to quote the *Ft. Laramie Scout*: "Boots and Saddles" sounded and the soldiers moved on to Douglas, leaving the old Fort with its crumbling buildings, to peaceful solitude and dreams of departed glory."

Arriving at Douglas on September 8th, the regiment participated in the Wyoming State Fair with about the same exhibitions as given at the Goshen County Fair.

On September 19th the regiment left Douglas, marching on to Ft. Russell through Wheatland and Chugwater, and arriving at the home station on September 24th.

The total distance covered on the march was approximately four hundred miles in fourteen marching days. The entire regiment gained valuable experience and was well received at every town along the route of march. Men and animals completed the march in excellent condition.

In October and November the regiment received eighty-seven remounts which are being trained by Troop F. Many of these animals will make excellent mounts, and some are excellent polo types.

The regimental football team is now in training under Lieut. West.

Many good recruits were received this fall and have completed their recruit training.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota
Lieut. Colonel R. W. Walker, Commanding

Oh, Sirs, and Comrades! The Editor of the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* asks that these notes be prepared by a commissioned officer, in a creditable manner and with a literary savor. Here, in the far, distant North, where Polar Bears make their lairs in icy caverns, feeding on fishes and walruses—we do enjoy ourselves, once a year or so. But we don't grow literary. Right now with a high wind (forty miles an hour) and a low temperature (fifteen below zero), this literatus has his mind set on the furnace below, rather than loftiness of thought. But we poor Esquimaux always do our poor best.

The past Fall has been a full one, no figure of speech here.

Each of our three troops participated in two of the gala events of the Black Hills, our habitat; said gala events being the Belle Fourche Round Up, the Golden Jubilee Celebration of the Homestead Mine at Lead, the Days of '76 at Deadwood. Contributions from the public spirited managers of these celebrations, together with the proceeds derived from our Post Horse Show, enabled us to take part in sporting events away from home. Our polo team went to the Polo Tournament at Fort D. A. Russell, from which tourney our Argonauts returned with some of the Golden Fleece, won from the 4th Cavalry and the 13th Cavalry. We would gladly furnish the names of our players but the Editor says no personal notes or advertisements. We sent a team of four horses (names of riders deleted) to the Colorado Endurance Ride at Colorado Springs. The funds were short but there was enough to get the team there. We counted on winning. We had to. We did! Second place, six hundred Iron Men. *Stella*—may her shadow never grow less—the ill-favored, hammer-headed daughter of *Roly*, won it and got her team-mates home safely and financially sound. *Adject*, gelded son of *Jack the Sailor*, finished but won no money.

Baseball and football have been played with gratifying results to Fort Meade.

Fishing has been unusually gainful, even for the Black Hills. To insure sport and profit for the lazy, our ice-pond and reservoir have been stocked with the contents of twelve milkcans of three inch Rainbows from the fish hatchery at Spearfish. The prairie chickens and the ducks have not been as plentiful as last year. But rabbits, both jack and cotton-tail abound.

In this Corps Area each Post helps with the recruiting. We have had pretty good

luck. A recruiting party went to the Standing Rock Agency last month and brought back eight recruits. One of them, Leo Crow Ghost, is a grandson of Sitting Bull. The party covered over five hundred miles, mounted, and accompanied by escort wagons. Quite an adventure in these days of automobiles. Later another party went in an automobile and brought back four. Another party brought back seven from the Rosebud Agency. Two parties are now out, one at the Pine Ridge Agency and the other at the Rosebud Agency. In all, we have twenty-five Sioux Indians and they are very promising young soldiers.

During the period covered by these notes each troop has held a formal Horse Show, giving trophies of value.

Polo, due to the cold weather, has been discontinued for the season. Several promising ponies have been developed. Each cavalry officer owns two mounts and there are some excellent polo prospects among them.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas **Colonel W. B. Scales, Commanding**

After staging a great many scenes and furnishing lots of atmosphere for the Famous Players-Lasky Corporation which was filming the picture "The Rough Riders," the entire First Cavalry Brigade on September 17th, marched to Camp Stanley, where it went into another de luxe camp provided by the Movie people.

Starting on September 20th, the annual inspection by the Corps Area Commander, and the annual maneuvers, were held on the Reservation, which proved to be an ideal location for cavalry maneuvers. The amount of action which took place, was equaled only by the continuous warfare waged on the red bugs and the rattlesnakes.

After the maneuvers, the polo and horse show delegation departed for El Paso, the results of their prowess being detailed elsewhere in this issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. The regiment then resumed the role of Movie extras and charged and recharged up San Juan Hill, until even the Director said we had this battle business down pat.

On October 20th, the 1st Cavalry departed for Marfa via the Pullman Route, and the 5th Cavalry and 1st Machine Gun Squadron started for Fort Clark, making the 150 mile march home in four days. Camp was made at Medina River, D'Hanis and Uvalde, the last day's hike from Uvalde being 45 miles. All the troops made the march in excellent shape, without losing a horse, or leaving any lame animals enroute. Instead of being an arduous march, both officers and men declared it was the most satisfactory march they had ever made.

After several days of policing up, the training started on November 1st. According to our present schedule, all special duty men attend drill until 9:15 and each troop is allowed to leave in three men, so that each organization turns out about 40 to 45 men for drill each day. Policing of corrals and other necessary fatigue is done in the afternoons.

The "Pilot" is about to resume publication and the first issue which will be out the last of November, will contain a full account of the horse races to be held on Thanksgiving Day. Considerable publicity has been given to these races and a large crowd is expected, as there are to be a number of civilian entries.

The remnant of Eagle Pass Camp is to be salvaged by the troops, each troop going down there for a tour of one month. Troop C has started the work.

After all is said and done, there is no place like home, and Fort Clark looks pretty good to all members of the regiment.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia **Colonel G. C. Barnhardt, Commanding**

The outstanding event of the past quarter has been the Annual Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show which was held at the post November 12th and 13th. A complete new show ring has been built as a permanent feature of the post. Through the courtesy of the Park Commissioner, this ring was constructed on McDonald Field, and is a valuable addition to the facilities of the post. The attendance was excellent and we believe it to

have been the best show ever held here. There was a large representation in the entries from Chattanooga and vicinity. A detailed account of the Horse Show is given elsewhere in this issue.

The post was most fortunate in having been able to obtain the polo team from Fort Benning, Georgia, for an exhibition game held on Sunday as a grand finale to the Horse Show. The game was started at 2:30 p. m. by a parade of the ponies of both teams, lead by the Sixth Cavalry Band playing the Regimental March. Final score: Sixth Cavalry 13; Fort Benning 5.

On November 11th, the 1st Squadron and Band, Major P. L. Thomas commanding, participated in the Armistice Day Parade in Chattanooga. During the march of the parade a representative of each unit was appointed to receive a floral tribute and place same on a cenotaph in front of the Auditorium in honor of the World War dead. The Regimental Commander, in company with a committee of prominent Chattanoogaans, reviewed the parade from the balcony of the Annex Hotel.

A regimental football team was organized and weekly games played with visiting teams during the season. The team is coached by Captain E. N. Harmon, a former West Point athlete. On Thanksgiving Day, the Sixth Cavalry team played the Fort McPherson team from Fort McPherson, Georgia, at Fort Oglethorpe. The final score was 18 to 0, with Fort McPherson on the long end of the score. Although the field was wet and slippery, due to recent rains, both teams played well and the game furnished much entertainment to the crowd witnessing the play. These two teams had previously played each other earlier in the season at Fort McPherson, where Fort McPherson had won 28 to 0.

Supplementary Season with the rifle commenced November 16th and continued throughout the remainder of the month. The 2d Squadron, Major Pendleton, commanding, camped on the range during this practice.

The fall and winter schools for officers and non-commissioned officers are in full swing, and tactical rides for all officers are held weekly.

On October 29th, a regimental review was held in honor of 1st Sergeant Louis Armstrong, Service Troop, who has been placed on the retired list. An interesting feature of 1st Sergeant Armstrong's service, which may well be an inspiration for all recruits, is the fact that throughout his entire service, every discharge given him was with the notation, Character "Excellent."

During the same review, all recruits who have joined the regiment during the last six months, were assembled in front of the center of the regiment and formally presented to the colors.

The regular Sunday and Wednesday polo games have been played during the fall with eleven players participating. Major Pendleton has been appointed Polo Representative for the regiment and Captain Meador elected Team Captain. The Sixth Cavalry polo team will go to Fort McPherson, Georgia the middle of December to take part in a tournament to be held there during that time. Plans are now being made for the training of new ponies for future use and, when our polo season closes in December, the task of developing new ponies will be taken up.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas **Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding**

The highlight in the past quarter was the First Cavalry Division Horse Show held in the Howze Stadium, Ft. Bliss, Texas, October 26, 28 and 30. It was the best Horse Show seen here in several years. Entries from all units of the Division participated, and every entry gave a creditable exhibition. The "spoony" equipment, fine animals, and excellent horsemanship, evoked unstinted praise from the several thousand spectators. The Seventh Cavalry achieved a fair share of places, securing 22 blue, 22 red and 22 yellow, ribbons. The team from the Regiment won the Remount Cup event, the prize event of the Show. In the Polo Pony events, Jumping Classes, Mule events, Ladies' and Children's

classes, Officers' Mounts, Wagon Classes, and Radio Sections, the Seventh made a very creditable showing.

Prior to the Annual Horse Show of the Division, the Regiment conducted a regimental horse show to try out all entries, and prospective entries, for the divisional show. All entries which qualified and secured first, second, and third places, were awarded ribbons and individual prizes. This preliminary show gave a measure of the possibilities of each entry, and served to greatly encourage the riders and exhibitors.

The Senior and Junior Polo teams of the Regiment gave a good account of themselves in the Division Polo Tournament held from October 17 to 31, although the honors went to the 8th Cavalry in both instances.

In September, Major General Ernest Hinds, Corps Area Commander, conducted his annual tactical inspection, lasting several days. After a review and inspection, and an inspection of stables and quarters, a tactical problem was held involving attack and pursuit and protection from aeroplanes. The Regiment received several favorable mentions for its fine work in the problem.

During September and October, a large number of the enlisted personnel were on detail dismantling Camp Furlong, Columbus, New Mexico, and transporting the salvaged material to Ft. Bliss. Those not thus engaged, were occupied with preparations for the Horse Show. Supplementary target season opened on November 8. Three groups fired for record on November 13, 20 and 24. Very satisfactory results were attained, considering weather conditions and the recent cut in ammunition allowance. The finals will be given in next quarter's notes.

In sports, basketball now occupies the stage. A south Area league, comprising the units of the South Area of the Post, 7th Cavalry, 2nd Machine Gun Squadron and the 2nd Cavalry Brigade Headquarters Troop, was formed on November 1, directed by a committee composed of Capt. G. S. Finley, 2nd Cav. Brig. Hqs. Tr., Capt. P. L. Singer, 7th Cav., and 2nd Lt. Joseph Smith, 2nd M. G. Sqdn. Twenty-six games have been played in the league thus far. Troop A, 7th Cavalry, champions for the last three years, now tops the list of wins. The winners of the league will represent the Area in the Post league. Chas. S. Aronson, El Paso, has presented a handsome trophy for the winners of the South Area league, and the Fred J. Feldman Co., El Paso, will give each member of the winning team a beautiful gold watch fob. Much interest and enthusiasm is being shown in the games of this league.

On November 21, the Non-commissioned Officers' Club had a very successful turkey shoot which netted the Club nearly three hundred dollars. These funds are to be utilized in purchasing gifts and giving banquets in the near future to retiring Sergeants.

The Regiment experienced profound sorrow this quarter in the loss by death of Lt.-Col. Victor S. Foster, 1st Cavalry Division, formerly assigned to the Seventh Cavalry, and of Major A. D. S. McCoy, M. C., the Regimental Surgeon. The Regiment extends its heartfelt sympathy to the bereaved families of Col. Foster and Maj. McCoy.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Lieut. Colonel Kerr T. Riggs, Commanding

On Thanksgiving day the regimental football team closed a successful season with a 0 to 0 tie game with the Bengal Tigers of Kansas City, Mo. The team won the Ripley Football Trophy for the regiment by winning two games from the Fort Leavenworth Detachment. Great credit is due to the coaching of Captain James V. V. Shufelt, Cavalry, former captain of Syracuse University team.

Under the able leadership of First Sergeant M. H. Brown the Ninth Cavalry Band gave a concert to the officers and ladies of The Cavalry School at the Godfrey Court Hop Room on November 30th, 1926. The regimental orchestra of ten pieces, led by Sergeant Clyde O. Andrews, has been kept busy playing for dances at the Post and filling engagements in nearby towns.

A Hallowe'en Masked Ball was held at the Ninth Cavalry Club which was greatly

enjoyed by members of the regiment and their friends. The Club was beautifully decorated and prizes were awarded for couple with best costumes and for couple with the tackiest costumes.

The following old timers have been separated from the regiment by reason of honorable retirement: First Sergeant Arthur Newton and Sergeant Richmond D. Lewis. They were honored by a retirement party and dance at the Ninth Cavalry Club, and presented with handsome gifts by their many friends in the regiment.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel L. C. Scherer, Commanding

The advanced course, Officers School opened on November 2d with a total enrollment of twenty. Sessions are held twice weekly from 11:30 A. M., to 12:30 P. M., on Tuesdays and Fridays, the present intention being to substitute later for the Friday session, a three hour period on Thursday afternoon to provide time for the drawing up and solution of problems in the field. The course prescribed, under the title of "Instruction in Training Methods," has for its objective the development of a complete guide for the annual training of the Regiment, with the dual aim of first, providing a set of specifications toward which the training of all individuals and units should tend, and of informing each individual as to what degree of training for himself or his unit is to be considered as standard; and secondly; of increasing the efficiency of training, by requiring all officers to thoroughly familiarize themselves with authoritative training documents in regard to objectives, methods, and means of training.

Regimental polo three times a week, started November first with all the officers of the regiment participating. Teams have been formed from the first squadron, second squadron and headquarters and service troops. During Christmas week it is planned to hold a round robin tournament between these three teams.

Four carloads of remounts have been received from Fort Robinson, Neb., with another carload enroute. After finishing quarantine they will be assigned, about fifteen to each line troop.

Immediately upon the close of the C. M. T. C., training and preparation for the annual maneuvers with our friendly enemies of the 25th Foot were expedited; this, since the events had suddenly been moved up a month on the calendar.

The doughboys, camping on the Target Range, caused the maneuver area to be limited to the east end of the reservation in the general vicinity of Garden Canyon. Followed a week (September 5-11) of enterprising maneuver with planes and night problems as diversions. The strenuous maneuvers of the preceding year were not duplicated, much to the joy of the infantry hearts, but what was done proved interesting and beneficial to all concerned.

All this activity culminated in the Corps Area Commander's Tactical Inspection on September 13-15. Unusually favorable reports were made on both regiments.

Fortnight before these maneuvers, arrived our new commanding officer, Colonel Louis C. Scherer. Said he, after watching developments, "It's all very satisfactory to me."

On Friday, October fifth, the First Squadron, commanded by Captain Victor W. B. Wales, left the Post on a five day practice march. Sunday, the seventh was spent at Adobe Canyon, in the Santa Rita Mountains. Officers and men report the hunting excellent in this vicinity. Five large bucks were brought down on this day. Return was made to the Post on Tuesday October ninth.

The Second Squadron, plus the 10th Cavalry Band and trains, left Fort Huachuca on November eighth enroute to Nogales, Arizona, to participate in the Armistice Day celebration at that city. The Squadron reached Nogales on Wednesday, November tenth. The distance from Fort Huachuca to Nogales is about fifty-eight miles.

On the morning of Armistice Day, the Squadron, together with the Second and Third Battalions of the Twenty-fifth Infantry, participated in a parade through the streets of Nogales. The afternoon schedule consisted of demonstrations and exhibitions by the

Twenty-fifth Infantry and the Second Squadron, 10th Cavalry, at the Nogales High School football field.

The Squadron left Nogales on the morning of the fourteenth, making the return trip to Fort Huachuca in two days' marching, arriving back at the Post Sunday afternoon. Major Chas. W. Foster, 10th Cavalry, is Squadron Commander and had charge of the march.

TWELFTH CAVALRY (less 2d Squadron)—Fort Brown, Texas

Colonel William T. Johnston, Commanding

On August 24th, 1926, the Fort Brown garrison marched to Fort Ringgold, Texas, for ten days' combined field maneuvers with the remainder of the regiment and the 4th Field Artillery, Mountain (less 1st Battalion) followed by the Corps Area Commander's Annual Tactical Inspection.

On August 26th and 27th, the Regimental Commander, accompanied by his staff, conducted a tactical inspection of the 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry. The 4th Field Artillery (less 1st Battalion) arrived at Fort Ringgold on Thursday, August 26th and the Fort Brown garrison on Saturday, August 28th. The 2d Squadron went into camp with the remainder of the regiment and manoeuvres began on the following Monday. The Camp Commander, Colonel William T. Johnston, 12th Cavalry, conducted several problems involving the use of cavalry, supported by mountain artillery, which proved highly instructive and which demonstrated conclusively that mountain artillery is sufficiently mobile to accompany cavalry anywhere. Even over the rather unfavorable ground in the vicinity of Fort Ringgold, overgrown with mesquite and cactus, the artillery was able to get into position and support the cavalry attack in ample time. In addition to the tactical exercises, a number of interesting and instructive lectures on the uses, powers and limitations of the several arms, were delivered to assembled officers and non-commissioned officers of all units.

The afternoons were devoted to athletics, including baseball and polo, and a field meet was held on Labor Day. The Fort Brown garrison made a clean sweep, winning four out of five games of baseball, winning one polo game and tying another with Fort Ringgold, and taking six first places in the field meet.

The Corps Area Commander conducted the annual tactical inspection of all units on September 7th, 8th and 9th. September 7th was devoted to inspection of the camp and quarters and barracks in the Post. The 12th Cavalry was inspected on the morning of September 8th, and the 4th Field Artillery in the afternoon. The night of September 8th—9th and the morning of September 9th, were devoted to a field problem involving both the 12th Cavalry and 4th Field Artillery, and on the afternoon of September 9th, the Corps Area Commander conducted a critique of the problem. His very generous remarks on the improvement shown over previous years was not only gratifying, but served as an inspiration for the coming training year.

On September 10th the encampment was disbanded and the 4th Field Artillery and Fort Brown garrisons began the march to their respective stations. The entire period of the encampment was most instructive and was thoroughly enjoyed by all officers and enlisted men. The camp site was excellent and the many conveniences afforded by the Fort Ringgold garrison were greatly appreciated.

The garrison arrived back at Fort Brown, September 14th, and immediately began supplementary rifle, pistol and saber practice, which were completed by November 1st. The Post football team is completing a highly successful season, having won five of the six games played to date against teams of the valley towns. A polo tournament is planned beginning January 10th. It is not yet definitely known what teams will participate, but at least one other military team and one civilian team are expected to compete. Ample funds have been raised by the sale of parking spaces, all arrangements are being rapidly completed, and it is confidently expected that a very successful and enjoyable tournament will be staged.

SECOND SQUADRON, TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Ringgold, Texas**Lieut. Colonel C. O. Thomas, Jr., Commanding**

Major Levi G. Brown, after four years at the Staff and Command School, Fort Leavenworth, Kan., was assigned to this station on June 30th. After two months leave reported for duty on August 26th and was assigned to command the Squadron.

The Corps Area Commander's inspection took place on Sept. 8th and 9th. The squadron participated in combined maneuvers with the 1st Squadron from Fort Brown and the 4th F. A. from Fort McIntosh. The inspection was satisfactory and the squadron was especially commended on its showing.

On Sept. 18th and 19th, a rodeo and race meet was held in the Fort Ringgold Athletic Stadium. Corporal Wright of Troop G, won the wild horse riding and Steer riding. A good racing program was put on in addition to calf roping, wild cow milking contest, wild horse race, roping and tying contest. It was a very successful meet and a good time was had by all.

The regular saber practice for the squadron was completed on Oct. 28th. Troop G qualified 83%, Troop E 80%, Troop F 78%. Considering that the squadron was employed the greater part of the year in salvage work, and that a large proportion of the men were recruits, the results obtained were very satisfactory.

The enlisted men's Hallowe'en Masquerade Dance held on Oct. 30th, was a huge success. Many people from the Valley were in attendance. The judges for the best costume, Col. Thomas, Capt. Massie and Capt. Hamilton, experienced great difficulty in selecting the winners. Finally first prize was awarded to Miss Smith for the ladies and to Pvt. Kramer, Sig. Corps for the men.

On Nov. 9th, Troop F, Capt. Fickett commanding, marched to Mission, Texas and took part in the Hidalgo County Fair held on Nov. 11th, 12th and 13th. The monkey drill squad and fancy riding made a great hit. The Troop returned to the post on Nov. 15th.

On Sat., Nov. 13th, a test was held for the squads of Troops G and E, the Radio Sect., Squadron Hq., and the buglers. It was very satisfactory and demonstrated conclusively the efficient manner in which the training of the squadron is being conducted under our new squadron commander. Corporal Gross of Troop G was especially commended by the Squadron Commander on the handling of his squad in an advance, and on the firing line.

Before the largest crowd assembled for an entertainment at the War Dept. Theatre at Fort Ringgold since the World War, the Fort Ringgold Minstrel and Vaudeville Troupe presented an evening of fun on Nov. 20th. The cast was composed entirely of officers and men stationed at Fort Ringgold. The program consisted of the usual black-face circle, black-face vaudeville and a hilarious "skit" entitled "The Battle of Rolling Bones." This show will be taken "on tour" on successive Saturdays to the various larger cities of the Rio Grande Valley, winding up at Brownsville. The routing has been so arranged that no military duty will be missed during the tour.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming**Colonel H. R. Richmond, Commanding**

The period November 1st, 1926 to March 31st, 1927, is being devoted to *Individual Training*; Troop Schools, for officers, non-commissioned officers and specialists; instruction and training in equitation, horse training and care of animals; training of troop horses and remounts; instruction and training of privates and recruits; instruction and training of the personnel pertaining to communications and supply.

The winter period is regarded as the appropriate time for individual instruction and training of every kind; only such unit training to be attempted as the weather will permit.

In the winter the unit is separated into its parts and each part examined, overhauled and repaired; with the beginning of Spring the parts of the whole are restored, the whole then made to run as a co-ordinated, efficient machine.

In the training of individuals and of units, the element of competition is to be utilized; a diversified proficiency of the greatest number, and of each individual according

to his grade and duties, is what is desired, rather than a disproportionate proficiency of individuals, or of units, along preferred and chosen lines.

Specific subjects once taken up are to be continued until finished; the teaching of too many principles at the same time is to be avoided; the subject matter of instruction and training is to be suited to the grade and duties of the officers and enlisted men concerned; officers and non-commissioned officers to be trained for instruction and leadership; specialists (and at least one understudy) in the technique of their work; privates, in the duties of their grade and in habits of efficiency, loyalty and discipline.

Officers, non-commissioned officers and specialists constitute the framework of the regiment, around them all the lesser important and constantly fluctuating elements of the regiment are built and rebuilt.

During the present period the officers of the Advanced Class are taking Correspondence Course "D." The schedule calls for two lecture periods, followed by a map problem, each week. In this manner the first 21 exercises and problems of Correspondence Course "D" will be finished this year; the course to be continued next year in the same manner, until Correspondence Course "D" is completed. Arrangements have been made with Corps Area Headquarters whereby 12 officers have been regularly enrolled for this work, the regimental commander having been designated as the director. Keen interest has been aroused and the officers feel they are getting just what is needed to put their feet on the main road to military education and proper professional qualification; and on the main highway also, which leads eventually to Fort Leavenworth.

The Basic Officers are receiving three hours instruction, and at least one hour of equitation, daily.

Specialists Schools are being conducted with particular stress laid on communication and intelligence personnel and clerks, saddlers, horseshoers and stable sergeants.

By March 31, 1927, officers, non-commissioned officers and specialists of the regiment, will be prepared to enter upon unit training in the Spring; in the Summer they will be prepared to act as instructors according to grade or specialty, for the civilian components of the Army. Troops, squadrons, and the regiment entire, will be prepared to function as associate units in the instruction and training of the Organized Reserves, the National Guard, The Reserve Officers' Training Corps and of organizations at Citizens Military Training Camps.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY (less 1st squadron)—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel J. R. Lindsey, Commanding

During the latter part of September, the Iowa Vigilantes, Sheriffs, Deputies and other law enforcing officers of the state of Iowa, held their fourth annual shoot on the target range at Fort Des Moines. This is an annual event sponsored by the Iowa Bankers Association and brings out several hundred of the best shots in the state of Iowa. While at Fort Des Moines, they were quartered in one of the barracks of the post. Some very excellent scores were made and the shoot was a decided success from every standpoint. The Association was high in its praise for the 14th Cavalry which had charge of the arrangements and conduct of the shoot.

On September 23rd, the troops of the Post participated in the grand review of the Grand Army of the Republic which held its annual convention in the city of Des Moines. This parade was one of the most inspiring ever witnessed in this section of the country. Marching at a reduced cadence, 4,000 aged veterans of the Civil War passed in review before General John B. Inman. In spite of the inclement weather and drizzling rain which fell throughout the parade, nearly half of the veterans insisted upon marching. Colonel Lindsey commanded the Army section of the parade. During the encampment, the majority of the veterans visited Fort Des Moines, where provision had been made to show them about the post.

On September 14-15, the regiment underwent the annual tactical inspection. The 14th was devoted to a minute inspection of troops, equipment, barracks, stables and store

rooms; while the 15th was devoted to an all day problem, embracing the various phases of cavalry action. The inspection was made by Brigadier General A. W. Bjornstad, who was assisted by Major Oliver Allen, Captain L. E. Toole and Lieutenant Ford, all of Corps Area Headquarters. The regiment conducted itself very creditably in all phases of the inspection.

Troop F under command of Capt. John E. Maher, was selected to represent the regiment in the Goodrich competition. The various tests were given by a board of officers consisting of Major E. P. Pierson, Capt. F. M. Harshberger and Capt. F. F. Duggan. The spirit of the men, and the whole hearted and sincere manner in which they conducted themselves throughout the tests, was most gratifying.

Headquarters Troop entered an exhibit of radio and communication equipment in the annual radio show at Des Moines. The equipment was attractively arranged and displayed, and was the center of great interest, the management stating that this exhibit was the drawing card of the show. A detail of men explained and demonstrated the equipment. The 14th Cavalry band which has been broadcasting a weekly program through radio station WHO for the past year, opened the show with a concert.

The winter equitation classes have been started. One class under the direction of Colonel Lindsey, is conducted daily for all officers. There is also one class for remounts. Two ladies classes have also been inaugurated. The beginners are under the instruction of Lieut. N. F. Mc Curdey; while the advanced class receives its instruction from Captain H. J. Fitzgerald. Both classes are exceedingly well attended.

In addition to the officers school, which meets four times a week, a course in public speaking for all officers is given each Saturday. At these meetings, two officers present subjects of special interest. Following the presentation of the subjects, a general discussion of the subject takes place.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Sheridan, Ill.

Lieut. Colonel Ben Lear, Jr., Commanding

Upon completion of the C. M. T. C., the Squadron put in a month of strenuous work in preparation for the annual tactical inspection of the Corps Area Commander, which was held on October fifth and sixth. The problem in connection with the inspection, consisted of a reconnaissance mission involving combat with an enemy cavalry force, and the protection of the flank of the 12th Infantry Brigade during its advance to the north.

Troop A, Captain E. M. Barnum commanding, represented the Squadron in the Goodrich Training Trophy Test, the final phase of which was completed during the first week of October. Throughout the test, which was held under adverse conditions, the spirit of the men of the troop was particularly satisfactory.

Troop C, Captain T. W. Ligon, commanding, departed for St. Louis on November fifth to attend the annual St. Louis Horse Show. The troop gave exhibition drills each afternoon and evening during the course of the show, November eighth to thirteenth inclusive, one of the performances being witnessed by the Queen of Roumania. No detail was overlooked by the Horse Show Committee in providing for the comfort of officers and men, and the week's visit in St. Louis was a most pleasant one. The Horse Show authorities were especially complimentary upon the performance of the troop.

On November twelfth, Troop B, Captain Clinton A. Pierce, commanding, marched to Chicago, where, on the thirteenth, it acted as escort to Her Majesty, the Queen of Roumania. During the stay in Chicago, the men and animals of the troop were quartered in the armory of the 122nd Field Artillery. The appearance of the troop upon this occasion received favorable comment from a number of sources.

The Squadron was glad to receive recently twenty-one remounts and fifteen Phillip packs.